

ANALYSIS & PDE

Volume 11

No. 5

2018

TIMOTHY CANDY AND SEBASTIAN HERR

**TRANSFERENCE OF BILINEAR RESTRICTION ESTIMATES TO
QUADRATIC VARIATION NORMS AND THE
DIRAC-KLEIN-GORDON SYSTEM**



TRANSFERENCE OF BILINEAR RESTRICTION ESTIMATES TO QUADRATIC VARIATION NORMS AND THE DIRAC–KLEIN–GORDON SYSTEM

TIMOTHY CANDY AND SEBASTIAN HERR

Firstly, bilinear Fourier restriction estimates — which are well known for free waves — are extended to adapted spaces of functions of bounded quadratic variation, under quantitative assumptions on the phase functions. This has applications to nonlinear dispersive equations, in particular in the presence of resonances. Secondly, critical global well-posedness and scattering results for massive Dirac–Klein–Gordon systems in dimension three are obtained, in resonant as well as in nonresonant regimes. The results apply to small initial data in scale-invariant Sobolev spaces exhibiting a small amount of angular regularity.

1. Introduction	1171
2. On Assumption 1: examples and consequences	1177
3. Wave packets, atomic spaces, and tubes	1185
4. A local bilinear restriction estimate	1190
5. The globalisation lemma	1198
6. Mixed norms and generalisations to small scales	1203
7. The Dirac–Klein–Gordon system	1211
8. Linear and multilinear estimates	1217
References	1238

1. Introduction

The Fourier restriction conjecture was shaped in the 1970s by work of Stein, among others, and has generated significant advances in the field of harmonic analysis and dispersive partial differential equations since then; see, e.g., [Stein 1993; Tao 2004] for a survey and references.

As an example, let $n \geq 2$ and C be a compact subset of the cone, say $C = \{(|\xi|, \xi) : \frac{1}{2} \leq |\xi| \leq 2\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$, and g be a Schwartz function on \mathbb{R}^{n+1} . Equivalently to the Fourier restriction operator $\mathcal{R} : g \mapsto \hat{g}|_C$, consider its adjoint, the Fourier extension operator

$$\mathcal{E}f(t, x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-i(t,x) \cdot (|\xi|, \xi)} f(\xi) d\xi$$

for smooth f with $\text{supp}(f)$ contained in the unit annulus. The function $\mathcal{E}f$ can be viewed as the inverse Fourier transform of a surface-measure supported on the cone C , and defines a function on \mathbb{R}^{n+1} which

The authors acknowledge support from the German Research Foundation via Collaborative Research Center 701.

MSC2010: primary 42B37, 35Q41; secondary 42B20, 42B10, 81Q05.

Keywords: bilinear Fourier restriction, adapted function spaces, quadratic variation, atomic space, Dirac–Klein–Gordon system, resonance, global well-posedness, scattering.

solves the wave equation. The Fourier restriction conjecture for the cone is equivalent to establishing the corresponding Fourier extension estimate

$$\|\mathcal{E}f\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} \lesssim \|f\|_{L^q(\mathbb{R}^n)}$$

within the optimal range of p, q . In the special case $q = 2$ this holds if and only if $p \geq (2n + 2)/(n - 1)$, and in the literature on dispersive equations this is stated as

$$\|e^{-it|\nabla|}f\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} \lesssim \|f\|_{L^2_x}$$

and called a Strichartz estimate [1977] for the wave equation; see also [Keel and Tao 1998].

In the course of proving Fourier extension estimates for the cone, it became apparent that a key role was played by bilinear estimates. Indeed, a major breakthrough was achieved by Wolff [2001], when he proved that for every $p > (n + 3)/(n + 1)$, $n \geq 2$, we have

$$\|e^{-it|\nabla|}f e^{-it|\nabla|}g\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} \lesssim \|f\|_{L^2_x} \|g\|_{L^2_x},$$

provided the supports of \hat{f} and \hat{g} are angularly separated and contained in the unit annulus. As a result Wolff was able to prove the linear restriction conjecture for C in dimension $n = 3$. It is important to note that, in the presence of angular separation, a larger set of p can be covered in the bilinear estimate than would follow from a simple application of Hölder’s inequality together with the linear estimates.

In parallel to these developments, bilinear estimates proved useful in the context of nonlinear dispersive equations; see, e.g., [Klainerman and Machedon 1993; Bourgain 1998; Foschi and Klainerman 2000]. The perturbative approach to dispersive equations is based on constructing adapted function spaces in which nonlinear terms can be effectively estimated. Bilinear estimates for solutions to the homogeneous equation, which go beyond simple almost orthogonality considerations, give precise control over dynamic interactions of products of linear solutions. However, to apply these homogeneous estimates to the nonlinear problem necessitates the transfer of such genuinely bilinear estimates to adapted function spaces.

Such a *transference principle* was implemented first in $X^{s,b}$ spaces; see [Ginibre et al. 1997, Lemma 2.3] and [Klainerman and Selberg 2002, Proposition 3.7]. Let us briefly illustrate it by looking at the following example. Suppose that $u, v \in L^\infty_t L^2_x$ are superpositions of modulated solutions of the homogeneous equation, i.e.,

$$u(t) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{it\lambda} e^{it|\nabla|} F_\lambda d\lambda, \quad v(t) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{it\lambda'} e^{it|\nabla|} G_{\lambda'} d\lambda',$$

which is true for $u, v \in X^{0,b}$ if $b > \frac{1}{2}$. Suppose in addition, that the spatial Fourier supports of u, v are angularly separated. Then, for any $p > (n + 3)/(n + 1)$, Wolff’s estimate transfers to

$$\|uv\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} \leq \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \|e^{it|\nabla|} F_\lambda e^{it|\nabla|} G_{\lambda'}\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} d\lambda d\lambda' \lesssim \left(\int_{\mathbb{R}} \|F_\lambda\|_{L^2_x} d\lambda \right) \left(\int_{\mathbb{R}} \|G_{\lambda'}\|_{L^2_x} d\lambda' \right),$$

which is equivalent to the bilinear estimate holding for functions in $X^{0,b}$. Another strategy involves certain atomic function spaces introduced in [Koch and Tataru 2005]. Suppose that

$$u(t) = \sum_{J \in \mathcal{I}} \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it|\nabla|} f_J, \quad v(t) = \sum_{J' \in \mathcal{I}'} \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) e^{it|\nabla|} g_{J'}$$

for finite partitions $\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{I}'$ of \mathbb{R} and $f_J, g_{J'} \in L^2_x$. Then, under the above angular separation assumption, Wolff's bound implies

$$\|uv\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} \leq \left(\sum_{J \in \mathcal{I}} \sum_{J' \in \mathcal{I}'} \|e^{it|\nabla|} f_J e^{it|\nabla|} g_{J'}\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{n+1})} \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \lesssim \left(\sum_{J \in \mathcal{I}} \|f_J\|_{L^2_x}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \left(\sum_{J' \in \mathcal{I}'} \|g_{J'}\|_{L^2_x}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}.$$

As a consequence, we deduce that Wolff's bilinear estimate holds for angularly separated functions in the atomic space U^p ; see Definition 3.4 below. This is one instance of the transference principle in U^p , which has been formalised in [Hadac et al. 2009, Proposition 2.19].

For many applications, the above superposition requirements are too strong, partly due to the duality theory for the spaces $X^{0,b}$ for $b > \frac{1}{2}$ and U^p for $p \leq 2$. Nevertheless, variations of the above strategies have been successfully employed in numerous applications to nonlinear global-in-time problems in the case $p \geq 2$. In the case $p < 2$, the only result we are aware of is [Sterbenz and Tataru 2010, Lemma 5.7 and its proof], where this approach is used in conjunction with an interpolation argument to give a partial result only; see Remark 6.2 for further details.

It turned out that one of the most powerful function spaces in the context of adapted function spaces is the space of functions of bounded quadratic variation V^2 , which is slightly bigger than U^2 . Our first main result of this paper is the corresponding transference principle in V^2 for a quite general class of surfaces in Theorem 1.1 below.

We start with some definitions. Define $\mathcal{Z} = \{(t_j)_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} : t_j \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } t_j < t_{j+1}\}$ to be the set of increasing sequences of real numbers and $1 \leq p < \infty$. Given a function $\rho : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow L^2_x$, we define the p -variation of ρ to be

$$|\rho|_{V^p} = \sup_{(t_j) \in \mathcal{Z}} \left(\sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} \|\rho(t_j) - \rho(t_{j-1})\|_{L^2_x}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}.$$

The Banach space V^p is then defined to be all right continuous functions $\rho : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow L^2_x$ such that

$$\|\rho\|_{V^p} = \|\rho\|_{L^\infty L^2_x} + |\rho|_{V^p} < \infty.$$

Given a phase $\Phi : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ we let V^p_Φ denote the space of all functions u such that $e^{-it\Phi(-i\nabla)}u \in V^p$ equipped with the obvious norm $\|u\|_{V^p_\Phi} = \|e^{-it\Phi(-i\nabla)}u\|_{V^p}$. In other words, the space V^p_Φ contains all functions $u \in L^\infty_t L^2_x$ such that the pull-back along the linear flow has bounded p -variation; in particular we have

$$\|e^{it\Phi(-i\nabla)}f\|_{V^p_\Phi} = \|f\|_{L^2_x}.$$

Before stating Theorem 1.1, we need to introduce the assumptions that we impose on our phases, which are motivated by [Lee and Vargas 2010; Bejenaru 2017]. Examples will be discussed in Section 2. Let $\Phi_j : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and Λ_j be a convex subset of $\{\frac{1}{16} \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$. Given $\mathfrak{h} = (a, h) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ and $\{j, k\} = \{1, 2\}$ we define the hypersurfaces

$$\Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h}) = \{\xi \in \Lambda_j \cap (\Lambda_k + h) : \Phi_j(\xi) = \Phi_k(\xi - h) + a\}.$$

With this notation, we are ready to state the main assumption; cf. [Bejenaru 2017; Lee and Vargas 2010].

Assumption 1 (transversality/curvature/regularity). *There exist $D_1, D_2 > 0$ and $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for $\Phi_1, \Phi_2 : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ the following hold true:*

(i) *For every $\{j, k\} = \{1, 2\}$, $h \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$, $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(h)$, and $\eta \in \Lambda_k$ we have the estimate*

$$|(\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')) \wedge (\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\eta))| \geq D_1 |\xi - \xi'|.$$

(ii) *We have $\Phi_j \in C^N(\Lambda_j)$ with the derivative bound*

$$\sup_{1 \leq |\kappa| \leq N} \|\partial^\kappa \Phi_j\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_j)} \leq D_2.$$

The condition (i) in Assumption 1 is somewhat difficult to interpret, but one immediate consequence is the bound

$$|\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')| \geq \frac{D_1 |\xi - \xi'|}{\|\nabla\Phi_1\|_{L^\infty} + \|\nabla\Phi_2\|_{L^\infty}}, \tag{1-1}$$

which holds for every $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(h)$. To some extent, this is a *curvature* condition, as it shows that the normal direction varies on $\Sigma_j(h)$. Another consequence of (i) is that for every $\xi \in \Lambda_1, \eta \in \Lambda_2$ we have the *transversality* bound

$$|\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)| \geq \frac{D_1}{\min\{\|\nabla^2\Phi_1\|_{L^\infty}, \|\nabla^2\Phi_2\|_{L^\infty}\}}. \tag{1-2}$$

This follows by simply observing that for every $\xi \in \Lambda_1$ there is $h \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ such that $\xi \in \Sigma_1(h)$. Our first main result can now be stated as follows.

Theorem 1.1. *Let $n \geq 2$, $p > (n + 3)/(n + 1)$, and $D_1, D_2, R_0 > 0$. For $j = 1, 2$, let $\Lambda_j, \Lambda_j^* \subset \{\frac{1}{16} \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$ with Λ_j convex and $\Lambda_j^* + 1/R_0 \subset \Lambda_j$. There exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any phases Φ_1 and Φ_2 satisfying Assumption 1, and any $u \in V_{\Phi_1}^2, v \in V_{\Phi_2}^2$ with $\text{supp } \hat{u}(t) \subset \Lambda_1^*, \text{supp } \hat{v}(t) \subset \Lambda_2^*$, we have*

$$\|uv\|_{L^p_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})} \leq C \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}.$$

Note that the constants N and C depend on the parameters $p > (n + 3)/(n + 1), n \geq 2$, and $D_1, D_2, R_0 > 0$, but are otherwise independent of the phase Φ_j , the sets Λ_j, Λ_j^* , and the functions u and v . Moreover, as the conditions in Assumption 1 are invariant under translations, the condition that $\Lambda_j \subset \{\frac{1}{16} \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$ can be replaced with the condition that the sets Λ_j are simply contained in balls of radius 16. In other words, the *location* of the sets Λ_j plays no role. We refer the reader to Corollary 6.1 for a generalisation of Theorem 1.1 to mixed norms. Further, we refer to Corollary 6.4 for a generalisation to more general frequency scales in the case of hyperboloids, which is also shown to be sharp.

Let us summarise the developments for solutions to the homogeneous equation, i.e.,

$$u = e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f, \quad v = e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g.$$

First estimates of this type for nontrivial $p < 2$ are due to Bourgain [1991; 1995] in the case of the cone, i.e., $\Phi_1(\xi) = \Phi_2(\xi) = |\xi|$. Subsequently, these have been improved by Tao, Vargas and Vega [Tao et al. 1998], Moyua, Vargas and Vega [Moyua et al. 1999], Tao and Vargas [2000a], before finally Tao

[2001] proved the endpoint case $p = (n + 3)/(n + 1)$; see also Remark 5.1. Actually, we observe that the vector-valued inequality in [Tao 2001] is strong enough to deduce the estimate in U^2 in the case of the wave equation; see Remark 5.2. Related estimates for null-forms have been proved by Tao and Vargas [2000b], Klainerman, Rodnianski and Tao [Klainerman et al. 2002], Lee and Vargas [2008], and Lee, Rogers and Vargas [Lee et al. 2008]. In the case of the paraboloid, i.e., $\Phi_1(\xi) = \Phi_2(\xi) = |\xi|^2$, the result for homogeneous solutions is due to Tao [2003], with generalisations by Lee [2006a; 2006b], Lee and Vargas [2010], and Bejenaru [2017] under more general curvature and transversality conditions, as well as by Buschenhenke, Müller and Vargas [2017] for surfaces of finite type. For our approach, the most important references are [Tao 2003] concerning notation and general line of proof and [Lee and Vargas 2010; Bejenaru 2017], concerning the assumptions on the phases and its consequences. Throughout the paper, we shall point out similarities and differences in more detail.

We would like to highlight the fact that we explicitly track the dependence of the constants on the phases in Theorem 1.1 based on the global, quantitative Assumption 1; in particular we avoid abstract localisation arguments. This is helpful for applications to dispersive equations, as we will see below. The main novelty of this result, however, lies in the fact that it holds for $V_{\Phi_j}^2$ -functions in the range $p \leq 2$.

Now, we turn to the application of Theorem 1.1 to nonlinear dispersive equations with a quadratic nonlinearity which exhibit resonances. Roughly speaking, by a resonance we mean the scenario that a product of two solutions to the homogeneous equation creates another solution of the homogeneous equation; see Section 8 for details. This leads to the lack of oscillations in the Duhamel integral and hence to strong nonlinear effects. In many instances, one finds that the Fourier supports intersect transversally in the resonant sets. As an example, we mention the local well-posedness theory for the Zakharov system [Bejenaru et al. 2009; Bejenaru and Herr 2011], where this is exploited in terms of a nonlinear Loomis–Whitney inequality [Bennett et al. 2005; Bejenaru et al. 2010; Bennett and Bez 2010; Koch and Steinerberger 2015]. This is a special case of the multilinear restriction theory [Bennett et al. 2006; Bennett and Bez 2010]. Here, we will exploit transversality in resonant sets via Theorem 1.1 and prove global-in-time estimates which go beyond the range of linear Strichartz estimates.

With this approach, we address the Dirac–Klein–Gordon system

$$\begin{aligned} -i\gamma^\mu \partial_\mu \psi + M\psi &= \phi\psi, \\ \square\phi + m^2\phi &= \psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \psi. \end{aligned} \tag{1-3}$$

Here, $\psi : \mathbb{R}^{1+3} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^4$ is a spinor field, $\psi^\dagger = \bar{\psi}^t$, $\phi : \mathbb{R}^{1+3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a scalar field, $\square := \partial_t^2 - \Delta_x$ is the d'Alembertian operator, and $M, m \geq 0$. We use the summation convention with respect to $\mu = 0, \dots, 4$, and the Dirac matrices $\gamma^\mu \in \mathbb{C}^{4 \times 4}$ are given by

$$\gamma^0 = \text{diag}(1, 1, -1, -1), \quad \gamma^j = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma^j \\ -\sigma^j & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

with the Pauli matrices

$$\sigma^1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma^3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We are interested in the system (1-3) with the initial condition

$$\psi(0) = \psi_0 : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^4 \quad \text{and} \quad (\phi(0), \partial_t \phi(0)) = (\phi_0, \phi_1) : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}. \quad (1-4)$$

In the massless case, (1-3) can be rescaled and the scale-invariant Sobolev space for (ψ_0, ϕ_0, ϕ_1) is

$$L^2(\mathbb{R}^3; \mathbb{C}^4) \times \dot{H}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbb{R}^3; \mathbb{R}) \times \dot{H}^{-\frac{1}{2}}(\mathbb{R}^3; \mathbb{R}).$$

Let $\langle \Omega \rangle^\sigma = (1 - \Delta_{\mathbb{S}^2})^{\frac{\sigma}{2}}$ denote σ angular derivatives; see Section 7B for precise definitions. Our second main result is the following.

Theorem 1.2. *Suppose that either $2M \geq m > 0$ and $\sigma > 0$, or that $m > 2M > 0$ and $\sigma > \frac{7}{30}$. Then, for initial data satisfying*

$$\|\langle \Omega \rangle^\sigma \psi_0\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)} + \|\langle \Omega \rangle^\sigma \phi_0\|_{H^{1/2}(\mathbb{R}^3)} + \|\langle \Omega \rangle^\sigma \phi_1\|_{H^{-1/2}(\mathbb{R}^3)} \ll 1,$$

the system (1-3)–(1-4) is globally well-posed and solutions (ψ, ϕ) scatter to free solutions as $t \rightarrow \pm\infty$.

As the proof relies on contraction arguments in adapted function spaces, the notion of global well-posedness in Theorem 1.2 includes persistence of regularity and the local Lipschitz continuity of the flow map and it provides a certain uniqueness class. Note that the angular regularity does not affect the scaling of the spaces. In summary, Theorem 1.2 establishes global well-posedness and scattering in the critical Sobolev space for small initial data with a bit of angular regularity.

In the case $2M > m > 0$, which we call *nonresonant regime* due to Lemma 8.7, this theorem improves Wang’s result [2015] by both relaxing the angular regularity hypothesis and replacing Besov spaces by Sobolev spaces. We also mention the previous subcritical result [Bejenaru and Herr 2017] without additional angular regularity, where the possibility of a Besov endpoint result with an $\epsilon > 0$ of angular regularity was discussed in Remark 4.2. In the case $m > 2M > 0$, which we call the *resonant regime* due to Lemma 8.7, this appears to be the first global well-posedness and scattering result in critical spaces for (1-3). A similar comment applies to the case $2M = m > 0$, which we call the *weakly resonant regime*. It is the resonant regime where we employ Theorem 1.1; see also Remark 7.6. Concerning further comments on the number of angular derivatives required in the resonant case, we refer to Remark 8.4.

We shall only mention a few selected results on this well-studied system (1-3). We refer the reader to [D’Ancona et al. 2007] for previous local results and to [Chadam and Glassey 1974; Bachelot 1988; Bejenaru and Herr 2017; Wang 2015] for previous global results on this system. Concerning its relevance in physics we refer the reader to [Bjorken and Drell 1964].

The organisation of the paper is as follows: In Section 2, we discuss a sufficient condition on the phases, verify Assumption 1 in the case of the Schrödinger, the wave, and the Klein–Gordon equations, and derive important consequences, in particular the dispersive inequality, and a bilinear estimate for homogeneous solutions in $L^2_{t,x}$. In Section 3, we study wave packets, atomic spaces and tubes. In Section 4, we state and prove a crucial localised version of Theorem 1.1. The proof proceeds by performing an induction-on-scales argument, and reducing the problem to obtaining a crucial L^2 -bound which in turn follows from a combinatorial estimate. Section 5 is devoted to the globalisation lemma, which removes the localisation assumption used in Section 4, and hence concludes the proof of Theorem 1.1. In Section 6, we generalise

Theorem 1.1 to mixed norms and, in the case of hyperboloids, give an extension to general scales and discuss counterexamples. In **Section 7** we prepare the analysis of the Dirac–Klein–Gordon system and prove **Theorem 1.2** under the hypothesis that certain bilinear estimates hold true. In **Section 8** we discuss some auxiliary estimates and finally provide proofs of the bilinear estimates used in **Section 7**.

2. On Assumption 1: examples and consequences

We now discuss examples, and consider in detail a number of key consequences of **Assumption 1**. All of this is known to experts, at least in the specific cases we are interested in. The main objective is to verify that **Assumption 1** allows for a unified treatment which allows us to track the dependence of constants on the phases.

2A. A sufficient condition. Let $\text{diam}(\Lambda_j) = \sup_{\xi, \xi' \in \Lambda_j} |\xi - \xi'|$. The condition (i) in **Assumption 1** is somewhat difficult to check (essentially since we insist on a *global* condition rather than just a local condition using the Hessian of Φ_j). In practise it is easier to check the following marginally stronger conditions.

Lemma 2.1. *Assume that the following three conditions hold:*

(i) For all $\xi \in \Lambda_1$ and $\eta \in \Lambda_2$

$$|\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)| \geq A_1. \tag{2-1}$$

(ii) For $j = 1, 2$, and every $\mathfrak{h} \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ and $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h})$

$$\left| (\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')) \cdot \frac{\xi - \xi'}{|\xi - \xi'|} \right| \geq A_2 |\xi - \xi'|. \tag{2-2}$$

(iii) The sets Λ_1 and Λ_2 satisfy

$$\text{diam}(\Lambda_1) + \text{diam}(\Lambda_2) \leq \frac{A_1 A_2}{2(\|\nabla^2\Phi_1\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_1)} + \|\nabla^2\Phi_2\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_2)})^2}. \tag{2-3}$$

Then, condition (i) in **Assumption 1** holds with $D_1 = \frac{1}{2} A_1 A_2$.

Proof. The first step is to observe that for vectors $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, and $\omega \in \mathbb{S}^{n-1}$ we have

$$|x \wedge y| \geq |y| |x \cdot \omega| - |x| |y \cdot \omega|. \tag{2-4}$$

Indeed, this follows from

$$|x \wedge y|^2 = |x|^2 |y|^2 - (x \cdot y)^2 = |y|^2 \left| x - \frac{x \cdot y}{|y|^2} y \right|^2,$$

which implies

$$|x \wedge y| = |y| \left| x - \frac{x \cdot y}{|y|^2} y \right| \geq |y| \left| x \cdot \omega - \frac{x \cdot y}{|y|^2} y \cdot \omega \right| \geq |y| \left(|x \cdot \omega| - \frac{|x|}{|y|} |y \cdot \omega| \right).$$

In particular, if we let $x = \nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')$, $y = \nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\eta)$, and $\omega = (\xi - \xi')/|\xi - \xi'|$, then since $|x| \leq \|\nabla^2\Phi_j\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_j)} |\xi - \xi'|$ (using the convexity of Λ_j), the lower bound (i) in **Assumption 1**

would follow from (2-2), (2-4), and the transversality condition (2-1), provided that

$$\left| (\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\eta)) \cdot \frac{\xi - \xi'}{|\xi - \xi'|} \right| \leq \frac{A_1 A_2}{2\|\nabla^2\Phi_j\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_j)}}. \tag{2-5}$$

The proof of (2-5) requires the condition $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(h)$ together with the assumption (2-3) on the size of the sets Λ_j . Let

$$\sigma_j(x, z) = \Phi_j(x) - \Phi_j(z) - \nabla\Phi_j(z) \cdot (x - z).$$

A computation gives

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla\Phi_j(z) \cdot (x - y) &= (\Phi_j(x) - \sigma_j(x, z) - \Phi_j(z) - \nabla\Phi_j(z) \cdot z) - (\Phi_j(y) - \sigma_j(y, z) - \Phi_j(z) - \nabla\Phi_j(z) \cdot z) \\ &= \Phi_j(x) - \Phi_j(y) + \sigma_j(y, z) - \sigma_j(x, z), \end{aligned}$$

and hence, using the assumption $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(h)$, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} &(\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\eta)) \cdot (\xi - \xi') \\ &= \Phi_j(\xi) - \Phi_j(\xi') + \sigma_j(\xi', \xi) - (\Phi_j(\xi - h) - \Phi_k(\xi' - h) + \sigma_k(\xi' - h, \eta) - \sigma_k(\xi - h, \eta)) \\ &= \sigma_j(\xi', \xi) + \sigma_k(\xi - h, \eta) - \sigma_k(\xi' - h, \eta). \end{aligned}$$

If we now observe that

$$\sigma_j(x, z) - \sigma_j(y, z) = \int_0^1 [\nabla\Phi_j(y + t(x - y)) - \nabla\Phi_j(z)] \cdot (x - y) dt \leq \|\nabla^2\Phi_j\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_j)} \text{diam}(\Lambda_j)|x - y|$$

we then deduce the bound

$$\left| (\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\eta)) \cdot \frac{\xi - \xi'}{|\xi - \xi'|} \right| \leq \text{diam}(\Lambda_1)\|\nabla^2\Phi_1\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_1)} + \text{diam}(\Lambda_2)\|\nabla^2\Phi_2\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_2)}.$$

Consequently (2-5) follows from (2-3). □

2B. The Schrödinger, the wave and the Klein–Gordon equations. We now consider some examples of phases satisfying Assumption 1. It is enough to check the conditions in Lemma 2.1. In particular, by making the sets Λ_j slightly smaller if necessary, it suffices to ensure that the transversality condition (2-1) and curvature condition (2-2) hold.

Firstly, consider the Schrödinger case

$$\Phi_j(\xi) = \frac{1}{2}|\xi|^2.$$

Then the condition (2-1) in Lemma 2.1 becomes

$$|\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)| = |\xi - \eta|;$$

thus we simply require that the sets Λ_j have some separation. Assuming that the diameters of the sets Λ_j are sufficiently small, we just need to ensure that (2-2) holds. However (2-2) is just

$$\left| (\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')) \cdot \frac{\xi - \xi'}{|\xi - \xi'|} \right| = |\xi - \xi'|$$

and so (2-2) clearly holds (with constant $A_2 = 1$).

Secondly, consider the case

$$\Phi_j(\xi) = \langle \xi \rangle_{m_j} = (m_j^2 + |\xi|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

where the mass satisfies $m_j \geq 0$. To simplify notation, we assume that for $\xi \in \Lambda_j$ there is a constant $A > 0$ such that

$$\frac{1}{A} \leq \langle \xi \rangle_{m_j} \leq A.$$

To check the transversality condition (2-1) we note that

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)|^2 &= \left| \frac{\xi}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_1}} - \frac{\eta}{\langle \eta \rangle_{m_2}} \right|^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{|\xi|}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_1}} - \frac{|\eta|}{\langle \eta \rangle_{m_2}} \right)^2 + \frac{2|\xi||\eta|}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_1}\langle \eta \rangle_{m_2}} \left(1 - \frac{\xi \cdot \eta}{|\xi||\eta|} \right) \\ &= \left(\frac{(m_2|\xi| + m_1|\eta|)(m_2|\xi| - m_1|\eta|)}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_1}\langle \eta \rangle_{m_2}(|\xi|\langle \eta \rangle_{m_2} + |\eta|\langle \xi \rangle_{m_1})} \right)^2 + \frac{2|\xi||\eta|}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_1}\langle \eta \rangle_{m_2}} \left(1 - \frac{\xi \cdot \eta}{|\xi||\eta|} \right) \end{aligned} \tag{2-6}$$

(in particular, we always have transversality if $|\xi| \approx |\eta| \approx 1$ and $m_1 \ll m_2$).

On the other hand, to check the condition (2-2), we use the following elementary bound.

Lemma 2.2. *Let $\ell \geq 2$ and $(a, h) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+\ell}$. If $x, y \in \{z \in \mathbb{R}^\ell : |z| = |z - h| + a\}$ we have the inequality*

$$\left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2 \geq |x - y|^2 \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{x - h}{|x - h|} \right|^4 \frac{|x - h|^2}{16|x||y||x - h|^2 + 4(|x - h| + |x|)^2|y|^2}.$$

Proof. The condition $x \in \{z \in \mathbb{R}^\ell : |z| = |z - h| + a\}$ implies $|x - h|^2 = (|x| - a)^2$ and hence

$$\frac{x}{|x|} \cdot h = \frac{|h|^2 - a^2}{2|x|} + a.$$

Therefore

$$\left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right| \geq \frac{|h|^2 - a^2}{2|h|} \left| \frac{1}{|x|} - \frac{1}{|y|} \right| = \frac{|x - h|}{2|h||y|} \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{x - h}{|x - h|} \right|^2 ||x| - |y||,$$

where we used the identities $h = x - (x - h)$ and $a = |x| - |x - h|$. The lemma now follows by noting that

$$|x - y|^2 = |x||y| \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2 + ||x| - |y||^2. \quad \square$$

We now show that (2-2) holds. A computation gives

$$\begin{aligned} |(\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')) \cdot (\xi - \xi')| &= \left| \frac{|\xi|^2}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_j}} + \frac{|\xi'|^2}{\langle \xi' \rangle_{m_j}} - \frac{\xi \cdot \xi'}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_j}} - \frac{\xi \cdot \xi'}{\langle \xi' \rangle_{m_j}} \right| \\ &= \left| \langle \xi \rangle_{m_j} + \langle \xi' \rangle_{m_j} - \frac{\xi \cdot \xi' + m_j^2}{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_j}} - \frac{\xi \cdot \xi' + m_j^2}{\langle \xi' \rangle_{m_j}} \right| \\ &= \frac{\langle \xi \rangle_{m_j} + \langle \xi' \rangle_{m_j}}{2} \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2, \end{aligned}$$

where we let $x = (m_j, \xi)$ and $y = (m_j, \xi')$. If we now note that the surface $\Phi_j(\xi) = \Phi_k(\xi - h) + a$ can be written as $|x| = |y - h'| + a$ with $h' = (m_k - m_j, h)$, then an application of [Lemma 2.2](#) gives

$$|(\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi')) \cdot (\xi - \xi')| \geq \frac{A_1^4}{32A^6} |\xi - \xi'|^2.$$

Therefore, by [Lemma 2.1](#), we see that (i) in [Assumption 1](#) holds with $D_1 = A_1^5/(64A^6)$. Note that the above argument also applies in the case of the wave equation $m_1 = m_2 = 0$.

2C. The dispersive inequality. To simplify the statements to follow, we fix constants $R_0 \geq 1$, $D_1, D_2 > 0$ and $N > n + 1$, and assume that we have phases Φ_1, Φ_2 satisfying [Assumption 1](#) and sets Λ_j, Λ_j^* with Λ_j convex and $\Lambda_j^* + 1/R_0 \subset \Lambda_j \subset \{1/16 \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$.

As a consequence of the curvature-type bound (1-1) relative to the $(n-1)$ -dimensional surface $\Sigma_j(h)$, we expect that we should have the dispersive inequality

$$\|e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f\|_{L_x^\infty} \lesssim t^{-\frac{n-1}{2}} \|f\|_{L_x^1} \tag{2-7}$$

for $f \in L^1$ with $\text{supp } \hat{f} \subset \Lambda_j$. To prove this decay in practise, the standard approach would involve a stationary phase argument. However, as we only have curvature information on the surfaces $\Sigma_j(h)$, and these surfaces are somewhat involved to work with, the standard approach via stationary phase arguments, keeping track of the constants, seems difficult to implement. Consequently, we instead present a different argument, using an approach via wave packets. Roughly speaking, fixing some large time $t \approx R$, the idea is to cover Λ_j with balls of size $R^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ and decompose $e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f$ as

$$e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f = \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap \text{supp } \hat{f}} K_{\xi_0} * f$$

for some smooth kernels $K_{\xi_0}(t, x)$ with $\|K_{\xi_0}(t)\|_{L_x^\infty} \leq R^{-\frac{n}{2}}$. Then since $\Sigma_j(h)$ is a hypersurface, by restricting to points close to $\Sigma_j(h)$ we should have

$$\begin{aligned} \|e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f\|_{L_x^\infty} &\leq \|f\|_{L_x^1} \left\| \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap \text{supp } \hat{f}} K_{\xi_0}(t, x) \right\|_{L_x^\infty} \\ &\lesssim \|f\|_{L_x^1} R^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_h \left\| \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_j(h) + R^{-1/2})} K_{\xi_0}(t, x) \right\|_{L_x^\infty}. \end{aligned}$$

The condition (i) in [Assumption 1](#) then shows that, for times $t \approx R$, the spatial supports of the kernels $K_{\xi_0}(t, x)$ are essentially disjoint, and hence

$$\left\| \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_j(h) + R^{-1/2})} K_{\xi_0}(t, x) \right\|_{L_x^\infty} \approx \sup_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_j(h) + R^{-1/2})} \|K_{\xi_0}(t)\|_{L_x^\infty} \lesssim R^{-\frac{n}{2}} \approx t^{-\frac{n}{2}},$$

which would then give the desired dispersive estimate (2-7).

In the remainder of this subsection, we fill in the details of the argument sketched above. We first require a technical lemma involving the surfaces $\Sigma_j(h)$.

Lemma 2.3. *Let $\{j, k\} = \{1, 2\}$, $h = (a, h) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$, and $r \geq 2(\mathbf{D}_2/\mathbf{D}_1)\mathbf{R}_0$. Assume $\xi_0 \in (\Lambda_j^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0)) \cap (\Lambda_k^* + h + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0))$ and*

$$|\Phi_j(\xi_0) - \Phi_k(\xi_0 - h) - a| \leq \frac{1}{r}.$$

Then $|\xi_0 - \Sigma_j(h)| \leq \mathbf{D}_2/(\mathbf{D}_1 r)$.

Proof. Define $F(\xi) = \Phi_1(\xi) - \Phi_2(\xi - h) - a$; by replacing F with $-F$ if necessary, we may assume that $F(\xi_0) \geq 0$. We need to show there exists $|\xi - \xi_0| \leq \mathbf{D}_2/(\mathbf{D}_1 r)$ such that $F(\xi) = 0$. To this end, let $\xi(s)$ be the solution to

$$\partial_s \xi(s) = -\frac{\nabla F(\xi(s))}{|\nabla F(\xi(s))|}, \quad \xi(0) = \xi_0.$$

Note that, for times $s \in [0, \mathbf{D}_2/(r\mathbf{D}_1)]$, we have $|\xi(s) - \xi_0| \leq s$. On the other hand, since $|F(\xi_0)| \leq 1/r$ by assumption, the transversality property (1-2) implies

$$F(\xi(s)) = F(\xi_0) - \int_0^s |\nabla F(\xi(s'))| ds' \leq \frac{1}{r} - s \frac{\mathbf{D}_1}{\mathbf{D}_2}.$$

Consequently $F(\xi(s))$ must be zero for some $s \in [0, \mathbf{D}_2/(r\mathbf{D}_1)]$ and hence the result follows. □

We now come to the proof of the dispersive inequality.

Lemma 2.4 (dispersion). *Let $j = 1, 2$. For any $f \in L_x^1$ with $\text{supp } \hat{f} \subset \Lambda_j^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0)$ and any $t \geq 1$ we have*

$$\|e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f\|_{L_x^\infty} \lesssim t^{-\frac{n-1}{2}} \|f\|_{L_x^1},$$

where the implied constant depends only $\mathbf{R}_0, \mathbf{D}_1, \mathbf{D}_2$, and $n \geq 2$.

Proof. It is enough to consider the case $j = 1$ and $R \leq t \leq 2R$ with $R \geq (10\mathbf{R}_0)^2$. Since $\Lambda_2^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0)$ contains a ball of size $(2\mathbf{R}_0)^{-1}$, we can find a finite set $H \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $\#H \lesssim \mathbf{R}_0^n$ and $\Lambda_1 = \bigcup_{h \in H} \Lambda_1 \cap (\Lambda_2^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0)h)$. In particular, by decomposing $\text{supp } \hat{f}$ into $\mathcal{O}(\mathbf{R}_0^n)$ sets, it is enough to consider the case $\text{supp } \hat{f} \subset (\Lambda_1^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0)) \cap (\Lambda_2^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0) + h)$. Let $\rho \in C_0^\infty(|\xi| \leq 1)$ such that

$$\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^n} \rho(\xi - k) = 1.$$

The support assumption on \hat{f} , together with the fact that $R \geq (10\mathbf{R}_0)^2$, implies

$$(e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f)(x) = \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\text{supp } \hat{f} + \frac{1}{10\mathbf{R}_0})} K_{\xi_0}(t) * f(x),$$

where $K_{\xi_0}(t, x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \rho(R^{\frac{1}{2}}(\xi - \xi_0)) e^{it\Phi_1(\xi)} e^{ix \cdot \xi} d\xi$. Since $R \leq t \leq 2R$, our goal is to show that

$$\left\| \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\text{supp } \hat{f} + \frac{1}{10\mathbf{R}_0})} |K_{\xi_0}(t, x)| \right\|_{L_x^\infty} \lesssim R^{-\frac{n-1}{2}}.$$

We would like to write this sum in a way which involves the hypersurfaces $\Sigma_1(h)$. Fix $0 < \delta \ll \mathbf{D}_1/(\mathbf{D}_1 + \mathbf{D}_2)$ and let $\delta^* = (\mathbf{D}_1/\mathbf{D}_2)\delta$. Given $\xi_0 \in R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\mathbb{Z} \cap (\text{supp } \hat{f} + 1/(10\mathbf{R}_0))$, we can find $a \in \delta^* R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\mathbb{Z}$ with $|a| \leq 2\mathbf{D}_2$ such that

$$|\Phi_1(\xi_0) - \Phi_2(\xi_0 - h) - a| \leq \delta^* R^{-\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Therefore, an application of Lemma 2.3 with $r = R^{\frac{1}{2}}/\delta^*$ implies $\xi_0 \in \Sigma_1(a, h) + \delta R^{-\frac{1}{2}}$; hence we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\text{supp } \hat{f} + \frac{1}{10\mathbf{R}_0})} |K_{\xi_0}(t, x)| &\leq \sum_{\substack{a \in \delta^* R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z} \\ |a| \leq 2\mathbf{D}_2}} \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_1(a, h) + \delta R^{-1/2})} |K_{\xi_0}(t, x)| \\ &\lesssim R^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_h \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_1(h) + \delta R^{-1/2})} |K_{\xi_0}(t, x)|. \end{aligned}$$

We now exploit the localisation of the kernel, together with the partial curvature condition (1-1). Write

$$K_{\xi_0}(t, x) = R^{-\frac{n}{2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \rho(\xi) e^{it[\Phi_1(R^{-1/2}\xi + \xi_0) - R^{-1/2}\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0) \cdot \xi]} e^{iR^{-1/2}(x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0)) \cdot \xi} d\xi.$$

Integrating by parts $n + 1$ times gives

$$|K_{\xi_0}(t, x)| \lesssim R^{-\frac{n}{2}} (1 + R^{-\frac{1}{2}}|x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0)|)^{-n-1}. \tag{2-8}$$

Let $\xi'_0 \in R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_1(a, h) + R^{-\frac{1}{2}})$ denote the minimum of $|x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0)|$. We claim that for every $\xi_0 \in R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_1(a, h) + R^{-\frac{1}{2}})$ we have

$$|x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0)| \geq \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{D}_1 R |\xi_0 - \xi'_0|. \tag{2-9}$$

Assuming this holds for the moment, we would then obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\text{supp } \hat{f} + \frac{1}{10\mathbf{R}_0})} |K_{\xi_0}(t, x)| &\lesssim R^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_h \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n \cap (\Sigma_1(h) + R^{-1/2})} |K_{\xi_0}(t, x)| \\ &\lesssim R^{-\frac{n-1}{2}} \sum_{\xi_0 \in R^{-1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n} (1 + R^{\frac{1}{2}}|\xi_0 - \xi'_0|)^{-n-1} \lesssim R^{-\frac{n-1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

as required. Thus it only remains to verify (2-9). This is immediate if $R\mathbf{D}_1|\xi_0 - \xi'_0| \leq 2|x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi'_0)|$. Thus we may assume that $R\mathbf{D}_1|\xi_0 - \xi'_0| \geq 2|x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi'_0)|$. Note that this implies $|\xi - \xi_0| \geq R^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. By construction, there exists $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_1(h)$ such that $|\xi - \xi_0| \leq \delta R^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, $|\xi' - \xi'_0| \leq \delta R^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. Therefore, applying the lower bound (1-1), we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} |x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0)| &\geq t|\nabla\Phi(\xi) - \nabla\Phi(\xi')| - |x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi'_0)| - t|\nabla\Phi_1(\xi_0) - \nabla\Phi_1(\xi)| - t|\nabla\Phi_1(\xi'_0) - \nabla\Phi_1(\xi')| \\ &\geq R\mathbf{D}_1|\xi - \xi'| - |x + t\nabla\Phi_1(\xi'_0)| - 4\mathbf{D}_2\delta R^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2}R\mathbf{D}_1|\xi_0 - \xi'_0| - 4(\mathbf{D}_1 + \mathbf{D}_2)\delta R^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq \frac{1}{4}R\mathbf{D}_1|\xi_0 - \xi'_0|, \end{aligned}$$

provided that we choose $\delta \ll \mathbf{D}_1/(\mathbf{D}_1 + \mathbf{D}_2)$. Hence we obtain (2-9) and thus result follows. □

Remark 2.5. By the standard TT^* -argument, this implies the linear Strichartz-type estimates for wave admissible pairs. We omit the details and refer to [Keel and Tao 1998].

2D. Classical bilinear estimate in $L^2_{t,x}$. The main use of the transversality property (1-2) contained in Assumption 1 is to deduce the following well-known bilinear estimate, which dates back at least to [Bourgain 1998, Lemma 111] in the case of the Schrödinger equation and $n = 2$.

Lemma 2.6. *Let $0 < r < 1$ and $f, g \in L^2_x$. Assume that the supports of \hat{f} and \hat{g} are contained in balls of radius r intersected with Λ_1 and Λ_2 respectively, and for all $\xi \in \Lambda_1$ and $\eta \in \Lambda_2$*

$$|\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)| \geq C_0. \tag{2-10}$$

Then,

$$\|e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g\|_{L^2_{t,x}(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})} \lesssim \left(\frac{r^{n-1}}{C_0}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|f\|_{L^2_x} \|g\|_{L^2_x}.$$

Proof. For $m = 1, \dots, n$ let

$$\Omega_m = \left\{ (\xi, \eta) \in \Lambda_1 \times \Lambda_2 : |\partial_m\Phi_1(\xi) - \partial_m\Phi_2(\eta)| \geq \frac{C_0}{2n} \right\}.$$

Condition (2-10) and the support assumptions on \hat{f} and \hat{g} imply that we have the decomposition

$$\widehat{(e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g)}(\xi) = \sum_{m=1}^n \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \hat{f}(\xi - \eta) \hat{g}(\eta) \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_m}(\xi - \eta, \eta) e^{it(\Phi_1(\xi - \eta) + \Phi_2(\eta))} d\eta.$$

Consider the $m = 1$ term and write $\eta = (\eta_1, \eta') \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$. The change of variables $(\eta_1, \eta') \mapsto (\tau, \eta')$, where $\tau = \Phi_1(\xi - \eta) + \Phi_2(\eta)$, gives

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \hat{f}(\xi - \eta) \hat{g}(\eta) \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_1}(\xi - \eta, \eta) e^{it(\Phi_1(\xi - \eta) + \Phi_2(\eta))} d\eta \\ = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n-1}} \frac{\hat{f}(\xi - \eta^*) \hat{g}(\eta^*)}{\partial_1\Phi_1(\xi - \eta^*) - \partial_1\Phi_2(\eta^*)} \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_1}(\xi - \eta^*, \eta^*) d\eta' e^{it\tau} d\tau, \end{aligned}$$

where $\eta^* = (\eta_1[\tau, \xi, \eta'], \eta')$. Thus an application of Plancherel, followed by Hölder in η' , shows that

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \hat{f}(\xi - \eta) \hat{g}(\eta) \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_m}(\xi - \eta, \eta) e^{it(\Phi_1(\xi - \eta) + \Phi_2(\eta))} d\eta \right\|_{L^2_{t,\xi}} \\ &= \left\| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{n-1}} \frac{\hat{f}(\xi - \eta^*) \hat{g}(\eta^*)}{\partial_1\Phi_1(\xi - \eta^*) - \partial_1\Phi_2(\eta^*)} \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_1}(\xi - \eta^*, \eta^*) d\eta' \right\|_{L^2_{\tau,\xi}} \\ &\leq (2r)^{\frac{n-1}{2}} \frac{2n}{C_0^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left\| \frac{\hat{f}(\xi - \eta^*) \hat{g}(\eta^*)}{|\partial_1\Phi_1(\xi - \eta^*) - \partial_1\Phi_2(\eta^*)|^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right\|_{L^2_{\tau,\xi,\eta'}} = 2n \left(\frac{(2r)^{n-1}}{C_0}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|f\|_{L^2_x} \|g\|_{L^2_x}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last equality follows by undoing the change of variables. Since the terms with $1 < m \leq n$ are identical, the lemma follows. □

2E. Geometric consequences. The last step in the proof of [Theorem 1.1](#) requires a combinatorial Kakeya-type bound. This bound relies on the fact that certain tubes intersect transversally, and is the main reason for introducing the condition (i) in [Assumption 1](#). The following is motivated by [[Lee and Vargas 2010](#); [Bejenaru 2017](#)]; see also Section 9 of [[Tao 2003](#)].

Let $\mathfrak{h} \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ and define the conic hypersurface

$$\mathcal{C}_j(\mathfrak{h}) = \{(r, -r\nabla\Phi_j(\xi)) : r \in \mathbb{R}, \xi \in \Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h})\}.$$

A computation shows that the tangent plane to $\mathcal{C}_j(\mathfrak{h})$ is spanned by the vectors

$$(1, -\nabla\Phi_j(\xi)) \quad \text{and} \quad H\Phi_j(\xi)v \quad \text{for } v \in T_\xi\Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h}),$$

where $H\Phi_j(\xi)$ denotes the Hessian of Φ_j at ξ . On the other hand, as we will see in the proof [Lemma 2.7](#) below, the condition (i) in [Assumption 1](#) implies

$$|(1, -\nabla\Phi_j(\xi)) \wedge (1, -\nabla\Phi_k(\eta)) \wedge (0, \nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\xi'))| \gtrsim |\xi - \xi'|$$

for every $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h})$. Hence, letting $\xi' \rightarrow \xi$ in $\Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h})$, we can interpret (i) in [Assumption 1](#) as saying that, for every $v \in T_\xi\Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h})$, we have

$$|(1, -\nabla\Phi_j(\xi)) \wedge (1, -\nabla\Phi_k(\eta)) \wedge (0, H\Phi_j(\xi)v)| \gtrsim |v|.$$

In particular, the vector $(1, -\nabla\Phi_k(\eta))$ must be transversal to the surface $\mathcal{C}_j(\mathfrak{h})$ for every $\eta \in \Lambda_k$. A more quantitative version of this statement — and the one we make use of in practice — is given by the following.

Lemma 2.7. *Let $\mathfrak{h} \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ and $\{j, k\} = \{1, 2\}$. For every $\eta \in \Lambda_j$ and $p, q \in \mathcal{C}_k(\mathfrak{h})$ we have*

$$|(p - q) \wedge (1, -\nabla\Phi_j(\eta))| \geq \frac{\mathbf{D}_1|p - q|}{(1 + \|\nabla\Phi_k\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_k)})\|\nabla^2\Phi_k\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_k)}}.$$

Proof. Let $w, w', w'' \in \mathbb{R}^n$. The identity

$$|x \wedge y \wedge z| = \inf_{v \in \text{span}\{x, y\}} \frac{|v \wedge z|}{|v|} |x \wedge y|$$

implies

$$\begin{aligned} |(1, w'') \wedge (1, w) \wedge (0, w - w')| &= |(1, w'') \wedge (0, w - w'') \wedge (0, w - w')| \\ &= \inf_{v \in W} \frac{|v \wedge (1, w'')|}{|v|} |(0, w - w'') \wedge (0, w - w')| \\ &\geq |(w - w'') \wedge (w - w')|, \end{aligned}$$

where $W = \text{span}\{(0, w - w''), (0, w - w')\}$. Consequently, applying the wedge product identity once more, we deduce that for every $v \in \text{span}\{(1, w), (0, w - w')\}$

$$|v \wedge (1, w'')| \geq \frac{|(w - w'') \wedge (w - w')|}{(1 + |w|)|w - w'|} |v|. \tag{2-11}$$

Fix $\eta \in \Lambda_j$ and $p, q \in \mathcal{C}_k(\mathfrak{h})$. By definition, this implies that we have $\xi, \xi' \in \Sigma_j(\mathfrak{h})$ and $r, r' > 0$ such that $p = (r, -r\nabla\Phi_k(\xi))$ and $q = (r', -r'\nabla\Phi_k(\xi'))$. Clearly, due to the convexity of Λ_k we have $|\nabla\Phi_k(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\xi')| \leq \|\nabla^2\Phi_k\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_k)}|\xi - \xi'|$. If we now let $w = -\nabla\Phi_k(\xi)$, $w' = -\nabla\Phi_k(\xi')$, and $w'' = -\nabla\Phi_j(\eta)$ in (2-11), then we deduce from (i) in Assumption 1 that

$$|v \wedge (1, -\nabla\Phi_j(\eta))| \geq \frac{D_1|v|}{(1 + \|\nabla\Phi_k\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_k)})\|\nabla^2\Phi_k\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_k)}}$$

for every $v \in \text{span}\{(1, -\nabla\Phi_k(\xi)), (0, \nabla\Phi_k(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\xi'))\}$. Taking $v = p - q$ and observing that we can write

$$(p - q) = (r - r')(1, -\nabla\Phi_k(\xi)) + r'(0, \nabla\Phi_k(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_k(\xi')),$$

the required bound now follows. □

3. Wave packets, atomic spaces, and tubes

We now discuss the wave packet decomposition. To some extent, we follow the arguments in [Tao 2003], but use a slightly different notation by using projections labelled by phase-space points as in [Lee and Vargas 2010]. Again, this helps us to carefully track constants. In addition, we consider certain atomic decompositions. Concerning the phases Φ_j , it turns out that the only property we require in the construction of wave packets below, is (ii) in Assumption 1. Consequently, throughout this section, we fix constants $R_0 \geq 1$, $D_2 > 0$ and $N > n + 1$, and assume that for $j = 1, 2$ we have sets Λ_j, Λ_j^* with Λ_j convex and $\Lambda_j^* + 1/R_0 \subset \Lambda_j \subset \{\frac{1}{16} \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$, and phases $\Phi_j : \Lambda_j \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$\sup_{1 \leq |\kappa| \leq N} \|\partial^\kappa \Phi_j\|_{L^\infty(\Lambda_j)} \leq D_2.$$

3A. Wave packets. Let $R \geq 1$ and define the cylinder

$$Q_R = \{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n} : \frac{1}{2}R < t < R, |x| < R\},$$

and $\mathcal{X} = R^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathbb{Z}^n \times R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\mathbb{Z}^n$. Define

$$\mathcal{X}_j = \{(x_0, \xi_0) \in \mathcal{X} : \xi_0 \in \Lambda_j^* + 3R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\}$$

to be the set of phase points which are within $3R^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ of Λ_j^* . Note that provided $R \geq (3R_0)^2$, if $\gamma = (x_0, \xi_0) \in \mathcal{X}_j$, then $\xi_0 \in \Lambda_j$. Given a point $\gamma = (x_0, \xi_0) \in \mathcal{X}$ in phase-space, we let $x(\gamma) = x_0$ and $\xi(\gamma) = \xi_0$ denote the projections onto the first and second components respectively. Fix $\eta, \rho \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ such that $\text{supp } \hat{\eta} \subset \{|\xi| \leq 1\}$, $\text{supp } \rho \subset \{|\xi| \leq 1\}$, and for all $x, \xi \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^n} \eta(x - k) = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^n} \rho(\xi - k) = 1.$$

Given $\gamma \in \mathcal{X}$ and $f \in L^2_x(\mathbb{R}^n)$, define the phase-space localisation operator

$$(L_\gamma f)(x) = \eta\left(\frac{x - x(\gamma)}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right) \left[\rho\left(\frac{-i\nabla - \xi(\gamma)}{R^{-\frac{1}{2}}}\right) f \right](x).$$

Note that by definition we have

$$f = \sum_{\gamma \in \mathcal{X}} L_\gamma f, \quad \text{supp } \widehat{L_\gamma f} \subset \{\xi \in \mathbb{R}^n : |\xi - \xi(\gamma)| \leq 2R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\}.$$

Moreover, letting

$$w_\gamma(x) = \left(1 + \frac{|x - x(\gamma)|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right)^{N-1+\frac{n+1}{2}},$$

for any $\Gamma \subset \mathcal{X}$ we have the orthogonality bounds

$$\left\| \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma} L_\gamma f \right\|_{L_x^2} \lesssim \left(\sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \|w_\gamma(x)L_\gamma f(x)\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \|f\|_{L_x^2}. \tag{3-1}$$

To simplify notation, we define the slightly larger phase-space localisation operators $L_\gamma^\# = w_\gamma(x)L_\gamma$. It is worth noting that $L_\gamma^\# f$ no longer has compact Fourier support; this does not pose any problems in the arguments to follow, as the only properties that we require are the trivial bound $\|L_\gamma f\|_{L_x^2} \leq \|L_\gamma^\# f\|_{L_x^2}$ and the orthogonality bound in (3-1).

To define wave packets, we conjugate the phase-space localisation operator L_γ with the flow $e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)}$.

Definition 3.1 (wave packets). Let $j = 1, 2$, $R \geq (3R_0)^2$, and $u \in L_t^\infty L_x^2(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})$. Given a point $\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j$, we define

$$(\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u)(t) = e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} L_{\gamma_j}(e^{-it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} u(t)).$$

Similarly, we define

$$(\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j}^\# u)(t) = e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} L_{\gamma_j}^\#(e^{-it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} u(t)).$$

We also require the associated tubes T_γ .

Definition 3.2 (tubes). Let $j = 1, 2$ and $\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j$. Then we define the tube $T_{\gamma_j} \subset \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ as

$$T_{\gamma_j} = \{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n} : \frac{1}{2}R \leq t \leq R, |x - x(\gamma) + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi(\gamma))| \leq R^{\frac{1}{2}}\}.$$

The most important properties of the wave packets $\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u$ are summarised in the following.

Proposition 3.3 (properties of wave packets). Let $j = 1, 2$. For any $R \geq (3R_0)^2$, $f \in L_x^2$ with $\text{supp } \hat{f} \subset \Lambda_j^*$, and $u = e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f$, we have $u = \sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u$, $\text{supp } \widehat{\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u} \subset \{|\xi - \xi(\gamma)| \leq 2R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\}$, and given any $\Gamma_j \subset \mathcal{X}_j$ we have the orthogonality bound

$$\left\| \sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u \right\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} \lesssim \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_j}^\# f\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \|f\|_{L_x^2}. \tag{3-2}$$

Moreover, the wave packets $\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u$ are concentrated on the tubes T_{γ_j} in the sense that for every $r \geq R^{\frac{1}{2}}$, and any ball $B \subset \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$, we have the bound

$$\left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \text{dist}(T_{\gamma_j}, B) > r}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u \right\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty(B \cap \mathcal{Q}_R)} \lesssim \left(\frac{r}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right)^{\frac{n+3}{2}-N} \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_j}^\# f\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \tag{3-3}$$

Here, the implied constants depend only on R_0, D_2, N and $n \geq 2$.

Proof. This result is somewhat standard; see for instance [Tao 2003, Lemma 4.1] and [Lee 2006a, Lemma 2.2] for related estimates. We only prove the localisation property (3-3), as the remaining properties follow directly from the definition of \mathcal{P}_{γ_j} , together with the analogous properties of the phase-space localisation operator L_{γ_j} . Let $\gamma_j = (x_0, \xi_0)$ and write

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u(t, x) &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \widehat{(L_{\gamma_j} f)}(\xi) e^{it\Phi_j(\xi)} e^{ix \cdot \xi} d\xi \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K_{\xi_0}(t, x - y) (L_{\gamma_j} f)(y) dy, \end{aligned}$$

where, as in the proof of Lemma 2.4, the kernel is given by $K_{\xi_0}(t, x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \rho(R^{\frac{1}{2}}(\xi - \xi_0)) e^{it\Phi_j(\xi)} e^{ix \cdot \xi} d\xi$. Note that, as in (2-8), integrating by parts $N - 1$ times, and using the fact that $|t| \leq R$, $R \gg 1$, we deduce that

$$K_{\xi_0}(t, x) \lesssim R^{-\frac{n}{2}} \left(1 + \frac{|x + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0)|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{1-N}.$$

Plugging this bound into the identity for $\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u(t, x)$, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u(t, x)| &\lesssim R^{-\frac{n}{2}} \left(1 + \frac{|x - x_0 + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0)|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{1-N} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \left(1 + \frac{|y - x_0|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{N-1} |L_{\gamma_j} f(y)| dy \\ &\lesssim R^{-\frac{n}{4}} \left(1 + \frac{|x - x_0 + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0)|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{1-N} \|L_{\gamma_j}^\# f\|_{L_x^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since there are $\mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{n}{2}})$ choices of ξ_0 , and

$$\begin{aligned} |x - x_0 + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0)| &= |(t, x) - (t, x_0 - t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0))| \\ &\geq \text{dist}((t, x), T_{\gamma_j}), \end{aligned}$$

an application of Hölder's inequality gives for any $(t, x) \in B$

$$\begin{aligned} &\sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \text{dist}(T_{\gamma_j}, B) \geq r}} |\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u(t, x)| \\ &\lesssim R^{-\frac{n}{4}} \left(\sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j \\ \text{dist}(T_{\gamma_j}, B) \geq r}} \left(1 + \frac{|x - x_0 + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0)|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{2-2N} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_j}^\# f\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\lesssim \left(\frac{r}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{\frac{n+3}{2}-N} \sup_{\xi_0} \left(\sum_{x_0 \in R^{1/2}\mathbb{Z}^n} \left(1 + \frac{|x - x_0 + t\nabla\Phi_j(\xi_0)|}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{-n-1} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_j}^\# f\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\lesssim \left(\frac{r}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{\frac{n+3}{2}-N} \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_j}^\# f\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

as required. □

3B. Atomic spaces and wave packets. Closely related to the V^p spaces, are the slightly smaller U^p spaces; see [Koch and Tataru 2005; Hadac et al. 2009; Koch et al. 2014].

Definition 3.4. Let $1 \leq p < \infty$. A function $\rho : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow L^2_x$ is called a U^p atom if there exists a decomposition $\rho = \sum_{J \in \mathcal{I}} \mathbb{1}_J(t) f_J$ subordinate to a finite partition

$$\mathcal{I} = \{(-\infty, t_1), [t_2, t_3), \dots, [t_N, \infty)\}$$

of \mathbb{R} such that

$$\|f_J\|_{\ell^p_J L^2_x} := \left(\sum_{J \in \mathcal{I}} \|f_J\|_{L^2_x}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \leq 1.$$

The atomic Banach space U^p is then defined as

$$U^p = \left\{ \sum_j c_j \rho_j : (c_j) \in \ell^1(\mathbb{N}), \rho_j \text{ a } U^p \text{ atom} \right\}$$

with the induced norm

$$\|\rho\|_{U^p} = \inf_{\substack{\rho = \sum_k c_k \phi_k \\ \phi_k \text{ a } U^p \text{ atom}}} \sum_k |c_k|.$$

The space U^p_{Φ} is the set of all $u : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow L^2_x$ such that $e^{-it\Phi(-i\nabla)}u \in U^p$ with the obvious norm.

Let $u = \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f_J$ be a $U^2_{\Phi_j}$ atom. Since $\mathbb{1}_J(t)$ commutes with spatial Fourier multipliers, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u &= \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} L_{\gamma_j} f_J, \\ \mathcal{P}^{\#}_{\gamma_j} u &= \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} L^{\#}_{\gamma_j} f_J. \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 3.3 gives the following.

Corollary 3.5 (wave packets for $U^2_{\Phi_j}$ atoms). *Let $j = 1, 2$. For any $R \geq (3R_0)^2$ and $U^2_{\Phi_j}$ atom $u = \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f_J$ with $\text{supp } \hat{u} \subset \Lambda_j^*$, we have $u = \sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u$, $\text{supp } \widehat{\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u} \subset \{|\xi - \xi(\gamma)| \leq 2R^{-\frac{1}{2}}\}$, and given any $\Gamma_j \subset \mathcal{X}_j$ we have the orthogonality bound*

$$\left\| \sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u \right\|_{L^\infty_{t,x} L^2_x} \lesssim \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_j} f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \|f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}. \tag{3-4}$$

Moreover, the wave packets $\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u$ are concentrated on the tubes T_{γ_j} in the sense that for every $r \geq R^{\frac{1}{2}}$, and any ball $B \subset \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$, we have the bound

$$\left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \text{dist}(T_{\gamma_j}, B) > r}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u \right\|_{L^\infty_{t,x}(B \cap Q_R)} \lesssim \left(\frac{r}{R^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)^{\frac{n+3}{2} - N} \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_j} f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \tag{3-5}$$

Here, the implied constants depend only on R_0, D_2, N and $n \geq 2$.

3C. Sets and relations of tubes. We repeat the definitions and notation used by Tao [2003], but as above we adopt the point of view that the basic objects are the phase-space elements $\gamma \in \mathcal{X}_j$, rather than the associated tubes T_{γ_j} .

For $\delta > 0$, let \mathcal{B} be a collection of (space-time) balls of radius $R^{1-\delta}$ which form a finitely overlapping cover of Q_R . Similarly let \mathbf{q} denote a collection of finitely overlapping cubes q of radius $R^{\frac{1}{2}}$ which cover the cylinder Q_R . Let $R^\delta q$ denote a cube of radius $R^{\delta+\frac{1}{2}}$ with the same centre as q . Given a collection $\Gamma_j \subset \mathcal{X}_j$, and a cube $q \in \mathbf{q}$, we define

$$\Gamma_j(q) = \{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset\},$$

so $\Gamma_j(q)$ is the subcollection of our phase-space decomposition such that the associated tube T_{γ_j} intersects a slight enlargement of the cube $q \in \mathbf{q}$. In the remainder of this subsection, the implied constants may depend on $n \geq 2$ only. Given $1 \leq \mu_1, \mu_2 \lesssim R^{100n}$, define

$$\mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) = \{q \in \mathbf{q} : \mu_j \leq \#\Gamma_j(q) < 2\mu_j, j = 1, 2\}.$$

Thus, roughly, $\mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)$ restricts to those elements of \mathbf{q} which are intersected by μ_j tubes $T_{\gamma_j}, \gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$. Given $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$, we let

$$\lambda(\gamma_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) = \#\{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset\}$$

and for every $1 \leq \lambda_j \lesssim R^{100n}$ we define

$$\Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2] = \{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j : \lambda_j \leq \lambda(\gamma_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) < 2\lambda_j\}.$$

So $\Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2]$ essentially restricts to $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$ such that the associated tubes T_{γ_j} intersect λ_j cubes in $\mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)$. Clearly

$$\bigcup_{1 \leq \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2 \lesssim R^{100n}} \Gamma_j(\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) = \Gamma_j.$$

The following relation \sim between balls in \mathcal{B} and $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$ plays a key role in the arguments to follow.

Definition 3.6. Given $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2]$, we let $B(\gamma_j, \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) \in \mathcal{B}$ denote a ball which maximises

$$\#\{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, q \cap B(\gamma_j, \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) \neq \emptyset\}.$$

If $B \in \mathcal{B}$, and $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2]$, we then define $\gamma_j \sim_{\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2} B$ if $B \subset 10B(\gamma_j, \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2)$. To extend this definition to general points $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$, we simply say that $\gamma_j \sim B$ if there exists some $1 \leq \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2 \lesssim R^{100n}$ such that $\gamma_j \sim_{\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2} B$.

Remark 3.7. This definition has the following important consequences:

(i) Let $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$ and consider the set $\{B \in \mathcal{B} : \gamma_j \sim B\}$. Since there are at most $\mathcal{O}(R^\epsilon)$ dyadic $1 \leq \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2 \leq R^{100n}$ such that $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2]$, and only $\mathcal{O}(1)$ balls B such that $\gamma_j \sim_{\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2} B$, we have

$$\#\{B \in \mathcal{B} : \gamma_j \sim B\} \leq \sum_{\substack{1 \leq \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2 \leq R^{100n} \\ \gamma_j \in \Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2]}} \#\{B \in \mathcal{B} : \gamma_j \sim_{\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2} B\} \lesssim \sum_{1 \leq \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2 \leq R^{100n}} 1 \lesssim R^\epsilon.$$

(ii) Fix $1 \leq \lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2 \lesssim R^{100n}$ and let $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j[\lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2]$. By definition, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_j &\leq \#\{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset\} \\ &\leq \sum_{B \in \mathcal{B}} \#\{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, q \cap B \neq \emptyset\} \\ &\leq \#\mathcal{B} \#\{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, q \cap B(\gamma_j, \lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2) \neq \emptyset\}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the maximal property of the ball $B(\gamma_j, \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2)$. Therefore, as $\#\mathcal{B} \lesssim R^{(n+1)\delta}$, we deduce the lower bound

$$\#\{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, q \cap B(\gamma_j, \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) \neq \emptyset\} \gtrsim R^{-(n+1)\delta} \lambda_j.$$

4. A local bilinear restriction estimate

The main step in the proof of [Theorem 1.1](#) is proving the following spatially localised version in U_{Φ}^2 .

Theorem 4.1. *Let $n \geq 2$ and $\alpha > 0$. Let $R_0 \geq 1$ and $D_1, D_2 > 0$. For $j = 1, 2$, let $\Lambda_j, \Lambda_j^* \subset \{\frac{1}{16} \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$ with Λ_j convex and $\Lambda_j^* + 1/R_0 \subset \Lambda_j$. There exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ and a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any phases Φ_1 and Φ_2 satisfying [Assumption 1](#), any $u \in U_{\Phi_1}^2, v \in U_{\Phi_2}^2$ with $\text{supp } \hat{u}(t) \subset \Lambda_1^*, \text{supp } \hat{v}(t) \subset \Lambda_2^*$, and any $R \geq 1$, we have*

$$\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \leq CR^{2\alpha} \|u\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{U_{\Phi_2}^2}.$$

In the remainder of this section we give the proof of [Theorem 4.1](#). The proof is broken up into three key steps. The first step is to use an induction-on-scales argument to reduce to proving an $L_{t,x}^2$ bound. We then use the localisation properties of the wave packet decomposition to show that the $L_{t,x}^2$ bound follows from a combinatorial Keakeya-type bound. The final step is prove the combinatorial estimate using a ‘bush’ argument.

4A. Induction on scales. Let $\alpha > 0$ and fix $R_0 \geq 1, D_1, D_2 > 0$. Fix $N = ((\alpha + 1)/\alpha)(100n)^2$. For $j = 1, 2$, let $\Lambda_j, \Lambda_j^* \subset \{\frac{1}{16} \leq |\xi| \leq 16\}$ with Λ_j convex and $\Lambda_j^* + 1/R_0 \subset \Lambda_j$. It is enough to show that there exists a constant $C > 0$ such that, for any phases Φ_1 and Φ_2 satisfying [Assumption 1](#), any $R \geq (3R_0)^2$, and any $U_{\Phi_j}^2$ atoms $u = \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f_J, v = \sum_{J'} \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g_{J'}$, with $\text{supp } \hat{f} \subset \Lambda_1^*, \text{supp } \hat{g}_{J'} \subset \Lambda_2^*$, we have

$$\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \leq CR^{2\alpha}. \tag{4-1}$$

To simplify the notation to follow, we now work under the assumption that any implicit constants may now depend on $\alpha, n \geq 2$, and the constants R_0, D_1, D_2 , but will be independent of R and the particular choice of phases Φ_j satisfying [Assumption 1](#).

The proof of [\(4-1\)](#) proceeds along the same lines as Tao’s argument for the paraboloid [\[2003\]](#). Namely, we use an induction-on-scales argument to deduce the estimate at scale R by applying a weaker estimate at a smaller scale $R^{1-\delta}$. We start by observing that it suffices to show that, for every $\Gamma_j \subset \mathcal{X}_j$ such that

$\#\Gamma_j \leq R^{10n}$, and any $\beta \geq \alpha$, we have

$$\left\| \sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \lesssim R^\beta (\#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_j^2 L_x^2} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell_j^2 L_x^2}. \tag{4-2}$$

To deduce (4-1) from (4-2), we let

$$\mathcal{X}_1(v_1) = \{\gamma_1 \in \mathcal{X}_1 : v_1 \leq \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_j^2 L_x^2} \leq 2v_1, T_{\gamma_1} \cap 2Q_R \neq \emptyset\}$$

and $\mathcal{X}_2(v_2)$ similarly, where $v_j \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}$. An application of Corollary 3.5 gives the decomposition $u = \sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_j} u$, as well as the bounds

$$\left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \mathcal{X}_1 \\ T_{\gamma_1} \cap 2Q_R = \emptyset}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \right\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty(Q_R)} \lesssim R^{-99n}$$

and

$$\left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j} \|\mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \left(\sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_j^2 L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim 1.$$

The analogous bounds hold for v . Moreover $\#\{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j : T_{\gamma_j} \cap 2Q_R \neq \emptyset\} \lesssim R^{n+1}$. Collecting these properties together, we deduce that $\mathcal{X}_1(v_1) = \emptyset$ for $v_1 \gg 1$ and

$$\left\| u - \sum_{R^{-100n} \leq v_1 \leq 1} \sum_{\gamma_1 \in \mathcal{X}_1(v_1)} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \right\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty(Q_R)} \lesssim R^{-90n}.$$

A similar argument shows that

$$\left\| v - \sum_{R^{-100n} \leq v_2 \leq 1} \sum_{\gamma_2 \in \mathcal{X}_2(v_2)} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty(Q_R)} \lesssim R^{-90n}.$$

Therefore, applying the bound (4-2) with $\Gamma_j = \mathcal{X}_j(v_j)$ and $\beta = \alpha$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \\ & \leq \left\| uv - \sum_{R^{-100n} \leq v_j \leq 1} \sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j(v_j)} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \\ & \quad + \sum_{R^{-100n} \leq v_j \leq 1} \left\| \sum_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j(v_j)} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \\ & \lesssim 1 + \log(R) R^\alpha \sup_{v_j} ((\#\mathcal{X}_1(v_1) \#\mathcal{X}_2(v_2))^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \mathcal{X}_j(v_j)} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_j^2 L_x^2} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell_j^2 L_x^2}) \lesssim R^{2\alpha}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last line follows from the orthogonality properties of the phase-space localisation operators (3-1). Hence (4-1) follows.

The proof of (4-2) proceeds via an induction-on-scales argument. The first step is to note that we already have (4-2) provided we take $\beta > 0$ sufficiently large. Indeed, a crude argument by Hölder and

Bernstein inequalities implies the bound with $\beta = (n + 1)/(n + 3)$ (which could be improved by using linear Strichartz estimates as indicated in Remark 2.5). Suppose we could show that, if (4-2) holds for some $\beta > \alpha$, then for every $\epsilon > 0$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \\ & \lesssim R^{2\epsilon} (R^{(1-\delta)\beta} + R^{D\delta}) (\#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2}, \end{aligned} \tag{4-3}$$

where $\delta = \alpha/(D + \alpha)$ and $D \geq 0$ is some constant which depends only on the dimension n . Then, since $D\delta < \alpha$, by taking $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, we deduce that we must have (4-2) for some $\beta' < \beta$. Iterating this argument then gives (4-2) for $\beta = \alpha$. Consequently, our aim is to prove (4-3), under the assumption that we already have (4-2) for some $\beta > \alpha$.

We now fix $\Gamma_j \subset \mathcal{X}_j$ such that $\#\Gamma_j \leq R^{10n}$, and $\beta > \alpha$. Let \mathcal{B} denote a collection of balls B of radius $R^{1-\delta}$ which form a finitely overlapping cover of Q_R . Let \sim denote the relation between points $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j$ and balls $B \in \mathcal{B}$ given by Definition 3.6. It is important to note that the relation \sim depends only on the fixed sets Γ_j , and *not* on u and v . We have the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \sum_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \\ & \leq \sum_{B \in \mathcal{B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_j \sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(B)} + \sum_{B \in \mathcal{B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_j \not\sim B \text{ or } \gamma_2 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(B)}. \end{aligned}$$

For the first term, which contains the tubes which are concentrated on B , we apply the induction assumption at scale $R^{1-\delta}$ to deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{B \in \mathcal{B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_j \sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(B)} \\ & \lesssim R^{(1-\delta)\beta} \sum_{B \in \mathcal{B}} (\#\{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1 : \gamma_1 \sim B\} \#\{\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2 : \gamma_2 \sim B\})^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim R^\epsilon R^{(1-\delta)\beta} (\#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last line follows from (i) in Remark 3.7. For the second term, as we can now safely lose factors of R^δ ; we may ignore the sum over the balls B (as there are only $\mathcal{O}(R^{\delta(n+1)})$ balls). Thus, after replacing D with $D - n - 1$, we need to prove the bound

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B \text{ or } \gamma_2 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(B)} \\ & \lesssim R^{\epsilon + D\delta} (\#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell_J^2 L_x^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{4-4}$$

To this end, an application of Hölder together with the orthogonality property of the tube decomposition gives

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B \text{ or } \gamma_2 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(B)} &\lesssim R \left(\sum_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_1} f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_2} g_{J'}\|_{\ell^2_{J'} L^2_x} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\lesssim R (\#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_1} f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_2} g_{J'}\|_{\ell^2_{J'} L^2_x}. \end{aligned}$$

In particular, the convexity of the L^p norms implies (4-4) follows from the $L^2_{t,x}$ bound

$$\left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B \text{ or } \gamma_2 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(B)} \lesssim R^{\epsilon + D\delta - \frac{n-1}{4}} (\#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_1} f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_2} g_{J'}\|_{\ell^2_{J'} L^2_x}. \tag{4-5}$$

Thus we have reduced the problem of obtaining the $L^{\frac{n+3}{n+1}}_{t,x}$ estimate (4-3) to proving the $L^2_{t,x}$ bound (4-5).

Remark 4.2. The fact that the above reduction can be done in U^2_{Φ} , is the key reason why we can extend the homogeneous bilinear Fourier restriction estimates to U^2_{Φ} .

Our goal in the following two subsections is to prove the bound (4-5), and thus complete the proof of Theorem 4.1. As in the previous subsections, we essentially follow the argument of Tao [2003], but apply the results of Section 2 in place of analogous results for the paraboloid. The general strategy is to first use the transversality via Lemma 2.6 to reduce to counting intersections of tubes. The number of tubes is then controlled by using (i) in Assumption 1 via Lemma 2.7 together with a “bush” argument. The notation for various cubes and tubes introduced in Section 3C is used heavily in what follows.

4B. The L^2 bound: initial reductions and transversality. Recall that the ball $B \in \mathcal{B}$ is now fixed. Write

$$\sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B \text{ or } \gamma_2 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v = \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v + \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \sim B \text{ and } \gamma_2 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v.$$

We only prove the bound for the first term, as an identical argument can handle the second term (just replace Γ_1 with $\{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1 : \gamma_1 \sim B\}$ and reverse the roles of u and v). The first step is to make a number of reductions exploiting the spatial localisation properties of the wave packets, together with a dyadic pigeon-hole argument to fix various quantities. To this end, decompose into cubes $q \in \mathbf{q}$:

$$\left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(B)} \leq \left(\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q} \\ q \subset 2B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Note that the concentration property of the wave packet decomposition implies

$$\left\| \sum_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \right\|_{L^{\infty}_{t,x}(q)} \lesssim R^{-\delta(N - \frac{n+3}{2})} (\#\Gamma_1)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1} \|L^{\#}_{\gamma_1} f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}.$$

$T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^{\delta} q = \emptyset$

A similar bound holds for v . By our choice of N , we have $\delta(N - (n + 3)/2) \geq 100n$. Therefore, as $\#\Gamma_j \lesssim R^{10n}$ and $\#q \lesssim R^{2n}$, it suffices to prove

$$\left(\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q} \\ q \subset 2B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j(q) \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim R^{\epsilon + D\delta - \frac{n-1}{4}} (\#\Gamma_1)^{\frac{1}{2}} (\#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}. \tag{4-6}$$

Let $\Gamma_1^{\not\sim B}(q) = \{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1(q) : \gamma_1 \not\sim B\}$ and decompose into

$$\left(\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q} \\ q \subset 2B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j(q) \\ \gamma_1 \not\sim B}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \sum_{\substack{1 \leq \lambda_1 \\ \mu_1, \mu_2 \lesssim R^{100n}}} \left(\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \\ q \subset 2B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{\not\sim B}(q) \cap \Gamma_1[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2] \\ \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Clearly, as we can freely lose R^ϵ , (4-6) follows from proving the estimate for fixed λ_1, μ_1, μ_2 ,

$$\left(\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \\ q \subset 2B}} \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{\not\sim B}(q) \cap \Gamma_1[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2] \\ \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim R^{\epsilon + D\delta - \frac{n-1}{4}} (\#\Gamma_1)^{\frac{1}{2}} (\#\Gamma_2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \|L_{\gamma_1}^\# f_J\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x} \|L_{\gamma_2}^\# g_{J'}\|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}. \tag{4-7}$$

To make the notation slightly less cumbersome, we introduce the shorthand

$$\Gamma_1^*(q) = \Gamma_1^{\not\sim B}(q) \cap \Gamma_1[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2].$$

Given $q \in \mathbf{q}$ and $\mathfrak{h} \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$, we define the set

$$\Gamma_1^{**}(q, \mathfrak{h}) = \Gamma_1^{**}[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2](q, \mathfrak{h}) = \{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q) : \xi(\gamma_1) \in \Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h}) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}})\}.$$

Thus $\Gamma_1^{**}(q, \mathfrak{h})$ consists of all $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q)$ such that $\xi(\gamma_1)$ lies within $CR^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ of the surface $\Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h})$. If we expand the square of the $L^2_{t,x}$ in (4-7) we get

$$\left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q) \\ \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \leq \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q) \\ \gamma'_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \sum_{\gamma'_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q)} \sum_{\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)} |\langle \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v, \mathcal{P}_{\gamma'_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma'_2} v \rangle_{L^2_{t,x}}|.$$

We now exploit the Fourier localisation properties of the wave packets to deduce that the inner product vanishes unless

$$\begin{aligned} \xi(\gamma_1) + \xi(\gamma_2) &= \xi(\gamma'_1) + \xi(\gamma'_2) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}}), \\ \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1)) + \Phi_2(\xi(\gamma_2)) &= \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma'_1)) + \Phi_2(\xi(\gamma'_2)) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}}). \end{aligned} \tag{4-8}$$

In particular, if we take $h_{\gamma_1, \gamma'_2} = (\Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1)) - \Phi_2(\xi(\gamma'_2)), \xi(\gamma_1) - \xi(\gamma'_2))$, then an application of [Lemma 2.3](#) implies

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q) \\ \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \\ & \leq \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q) \\ \gamma'_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \sum_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q, h_{\gamma_1, \gamma'_2})} \sum_{\substack{\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q) \\ \xi(\gamma_2) = \xi(\gamma'_1) + \xi(\gamma'_2) - \xi(\gamma_1) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-1/2})}} \left| \langle \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v, \mathcal{P}_{\gamma'_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma'_2} v \rangle_{L^2_{t,x}} \right|. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, an application of [Lemma 2.6](#) easily gives the $U^2_{\mathbb{F}}$ bound

$$\| \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \|_{L^2_{t,x}} \lesssim R^{-\frac{n-1}{4}} \| L^{\#}_{\gamma_1} f_J \|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x} \| L^{\#}_{\gamma_2} g_{J'} \|_{\ell^2_{J'} L^2_x}.$$

If we now note that, for fixed γ_1, γ'_2 , and γ'_1 and any $q \in \mathbf{q}$, we have

$$\#\{ \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2 : T_{\gamma_2} \cap R^\delta q \neq 0, \xi(\gamma_2) = \xi(\gamma'_1) + \xi(\gamma'_2) - \xi(\gamma_1) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}}) \} \lesssim R^{n\delta}$$

then an application of Cauchy–Schwarz gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \sum_{\substack{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^*(q) \\ \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2(q)}} \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_1} u \mathcal{P}_{\gamma_2} v \right\|_{L^2_{t,x}(q)}^2 \\ & \lesssim R^{D\delta - \frac{n-1}{2}} \#\Gamma_1^*(q) \#\Gamma_2(q) \sup_h \#\Gamma_1^{**}(q, h) \sup_{\gamma_j \in \Gamma_j} \| L^{\#}_{\gamma_1} f_J \|_{\ell^2_J L^2_x}^2 \| L^{\#}_{\gamma_2} g_{J'} \|_{\ell^2_{J'} L^2_x}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently the bound (4-7) follows from the combinatorial estimate

$$\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \\ q \subset 2B}} \#\Gamma_1^*(q) \#\Gamma_2(q) \sup_{h \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}} \#\Gamma_1^{**}(q, h) \lesssim R^{D\delta} \#\Gamma_1 \#\Gamma_2. \tag{4-9}$$

We now simplify this bound slightly by exploiting the dyadic localisations we performed earlier. More precisely, by definition, for every $q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)$, we have $\#\Gamma_2(q) \leq 2\mu_2$. On the other hand, by exchanging the order of summation, recalling the shorthand $\Gamma_1^*(q) = \Gamma_1^{\mathcal{J}^B}(q) \cap \Gamma_1[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2]$, and using the definition of the set $\Gamma_1[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2]$, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\substack{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \\ q \subset 2B}} \#\Gamma_1^*(q) & \leq \sum_{q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)} \#(\Gamma_1(q) \cap \Gamma[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2]) \\ & = \sum_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2]} \#\{ q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq 0 \} \leq 2\lambda_1 \#\Gamma_1 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we have reduced the bound (4-9) to proving the combinatorial Kakeya-type estimate

$$\sup_{\substack{h \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n} \\ q \in \mathbf{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2), q \subset 2B}} \Gamma_1^{**}[\lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2](q, h) \lesssim R^{D\delta} \frac{\#\Gamma_2}{\lambda_1 \mu_2}. \tag{4-10}$$

The proof of this bound is the focus of the next subsection.

4C. The L^2 bound: the combinatorial estimate. We have reduced the proof of [Theorem 4.1](#) to obtaining the combinatorial bound (4-10), which is essentially well known to experts as it does not see the difference between homogeneous solutions and $V_{\Phi_j}^2$ -functions. For completeness, we include the proof here. We follow the “bush” argument used in [\[Tao 2003\]](#), making some minor adjustments only to relate it to [Assumption 1](#). Recall that we have fixed a ball $B \in \mathcal{B}$. Fix any $\mathfrak{h} \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ and $q_0 \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)$ with $q_0 \subset 2B$. Our goal is to prove

$$\#\Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h}) \lesssim R^{D\delta} \frac{\#\Gamma_2}{\lambda_1 \mu_2}.$$

The first step is to exploit the fact that γ_1 is not concentrated on B . Recall from [Section 3C](#) that for $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1$ we have defined the ball $B(\gamma_1, \lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2) \in \mathcal{B}$ to be (a) maximiser for the quantity

$$\#\{q \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_j} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, q \cap B(\gamma_j, \lambda_j, \mu_1, \mu_2) \neq \emptyset\}.$$

Let $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})$. By construction this implies $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{\not\subset B}(q_0)$, and hence by the definition of the relation \sim , we have $B \not\subset 10B(\gamma_1, \lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2)$. Since $q_0 \subset 2B$ and the balls in \mathcal{B} have radius $R^{1-\delta}$, we must have $\text{dist}(q_0, B(\gamma_1, \lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2)) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}$. In particular, by (ii) in [Remark 3.7](#), we have for every $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})$

$$\begin{aligned} \#\{q \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, \text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}\} \\ \gtrsim \#\{q \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, q \cap B(\gamma_1, \lambda_1, \mu_1, \mu_2) \neq \emptyset\} \gtrsim R^{-D\delta} \lambda_1. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, since for $q \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)$ we have $\#\Gamma_2(q) \geq \mu_2$, we deduce that

$$\#\{(q, \gamma_2) \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \times \Gamma_2 : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, T_{\gamma_2} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, \text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}\} \gtrsim R^{-D\delta} \lambda_1 \mu_2.$$

Summing up over $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})$ and then changing the order of summation gives

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_1 \mu_2 \#\Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h}) \\ \lesssim R^{D\delta} \sum_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})} \#\{(q, \gamma_2) \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \times \Gamma_2 : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, T_{\gamma_2} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, \text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}\} \\ = R^{D\delta} \sum_{\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2} \#\{(q, \gamma_1) \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \times \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h}) : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, T_{\gamma_2} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, \text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}\}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the required bound (4-10) follows from the lemma below; see [\[Tao 2003, Lemma 8.1\]](#).

Lemma 4.3. *Let $q_0 \in \mathfrak{q}$, $\mathfrak{h} \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$, and $\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2$. Then*

$$\#\{(q, \gamma_1) \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \times \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h}) : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, T_{\gamma_2} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, \text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}\} \lesssim R^{D\delta}.$$

Proof. Define the bush (or “fan”) at q_0 by

$$\text{Bush}(q_0) = \bigcup_{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})} T_{\gamma_1}.$$

Thus $\text{Bush}(q_0) \subset \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ is the union of all tubes T_{γ_1} (associated to phase-space elements $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})$) passing through a neighbourhood of the cube q_0 . Our goal is then to bound the sum

$$\sum_{\substack{q \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2) \\ q \subset \text{Bush}(q_0) \cap T_{\gamma_2} + \mathcal{O}(R^{1/2+\delta}) \\ \text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}}} \#\{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h}) : T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset\}. \tag{4-11}$$

We first count the number of possible cubes in the outer summation. The idea is to first show that

$$\text{Bush}(q_0) \subset (t_0, x_0) + \mathcal{C}_1(\mathfrak{h}) + \mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{1}{2}+D\delta}), \tag{4-12}$$

where (t_0, x_0) denotes the centre of the cube q_0 , and the conic hypersurface $\mathcal{C}_1(\mathfrak{h})$ is given by

$$\mathcal{C}_1(\mathfrak{h}) = \{(r, -r \nabla \Phi_1(\xi)) : r \in \mathbb{R}, \xi \in \Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h})\}.$$

If we had (4-12), an application of Lemma 2.7 would then show that $\text{Bush}(q_0) \cap T_{\gamma_2}$ is contained in a ball of radius $R^{\frac{1}{2}+D\delta}$, and hence the outer summation in (4-11) only contains $\mathcal{O}(R^{D\delta})$ terms. To show the inclusion (4-12), suppose that $(t, x) \in \text{Bush}(q_0)$. Then $(t, x) \in T_{\gamma_1}$ for some $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1^{**}(q_0, \mathfrak{h})$. By construction, we have $\xi(\gamma) = \xi^* + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}})$ for some $\xi^* \in \Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h})$. On the other hand, since $T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q_0 \neq \emptyset$, we have

$$x - x_0 + (t - t_0) \nabla \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1)) = [x - x(\gamma) + t \nabla \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1))] - [x_0 - x(\gamma) + t_0 \nabla \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1))] = \mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{1}{2}+\delta}).$$

Therefore, since $|t - t_0| \lesssim R$, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} (t, x) - (t_0, x_0) &= (t - t_0, -(t - t_0) \nabla \Phi_1(\xi^*)) + (0, x - x_0 + (t - t_0) \nabla \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1))) + (0, (t - t_0)[\nabla \Phi_1(\xi^*) - \nabla \Phi_1(\gamma(\xi))]) \\ &= (t - t_0, -(t - t_0) \nabla \Phi_1(\xi^*)) + \mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{1}{2}+\delta}) \end{aligned}$$

and hence we have (4-12). Consequently, the outer sum in (4-11) is only over $\mathcal{O}(R^{C\delta})$ cubes.

Fix $q \in \mathfrak{q}(\mu_1, \mu_2)$ with $\text{dist}(q, q_0) \gtrsim R^{1-\delta}$. As the outer sum in (4-11) only adds $\mathcal{O}(R^{D\delta})$, the required bound now follows from

$$\#\{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1 : \xi(\gamma_1) \in \Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h}) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}}), T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q_0 \neq \emptyset\} \lesssim R^\delta. \tag{4-13}$$

The point is that since the cubes q and q_0 are at a distance $R^{1-\delta}$ apart, the condition that T_{γ_1} must intersect both cubes, essentially fixes the tube T_{γ_1} . Since $\xi(\gamma_1) \in \Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h}) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}})$, the bound (1-1) implies that fixing the tube T_{γ_1} also more or less fixes the phase-space element γ_1 (note that without the bound (1-1), the set in (4-13) could potentially contain far more than $\mathcal{O}(R^\delta)$ points). In more detail, let

$$\gamma_1, \gamma'_1 \in \{\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1 : \xi(\gamma_1) \in \Sigma_1(\mathfrak{h}) + \mathcal{O}(R^{-\frac{1}{2}}), T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q \neq \emptyset, T_{\gamma_1} \cap R^\delta q_0 \neq \emptyset\}.$$

In light of (1-1), the estimate (4-13) would follow from the bounds

$$|x(\gamma_1) - x(\gamma'_1)| \lesssim R^{\frac{1}{2}+\delta}, \quad |v(\gamma_1) - v(\gamma'_1)| \lesssim R^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta}, \tag{4-14}$$

where for ease of notation we define the *velocity* as $v(\gamma_1) = \Phi_1(\xi(\gamma_1))$. We now exploit the condition that the tubes T_{γ_1} and $T_{\gamma'_1}$ intersect the cubes q and q_0 . Let (t_q, x_q) denote the centre of the cube q and (t_0, x_0) the centre of q_0 . Since $|v(\gamma_1)| \leq D_2$ and

$$x_0 - x_q + (t_0 - t_q)v(\gamma_1) = (x_0 - x(\gamma_1) + t_0v(\gamma_1)) - (x_q - x(\gamma_1) + t_qv(\gamma_1)) = \mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{1}{2}+D\delta}),$$

the separation of the cubes q and q_0 implies $R^{1-C\delta} \lesssim |t_0 - t_q| \lesssim R$. A computation shows that

$$(t_0 - t_q)(v(\gamma_1) - v(\gamma'_1)) = \mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{1}{2}+D\delta}), \quad x(\gamma_1) - x(\gamma'_1) = t_0(v(\gamma'_1) - v(\gamma_1)) + \mathcal{O}(R^{\frac{1}{2}+D\delta}),$$

and hence the bound on $|t_0 - t_q|$ gives (4-14). □

5. The globalisation lemma

We now complete the proof of [Theorem 1.1](#) by showing that it follows from the localised bound in [Theorem 4.1](#). The proof of [Theorem 1.1](#) proceeds by using a strategy sketched in Section 8 of [\[Klainerman et al. 2002\]](#), together with an interpolation argument to replace $U_{\Phi_j}^2$ with $V_{\Phi_j}^2$.

Proof of Theorem 1.1. The first step is to show that by exploiting the (approximate) finite speed of propagation of frequency-localised waves, the bilinear estimate on Q_R implies the same estimate holds on $I_R \times \mathbb{R}^n$ with $I_R = [0, R]$. The second step is to remove the remaining temporal localisation and R^α -factor by using duality, together with the dispersive decay in [Lemma 2.4](#). Finally we use a simple interpolation argument to replace $U_{\Phi_j}^2$ with the larger $V_{\Phi_j}^2$ space.

Step 1: from Q_R to $I_R \times \mathbb{R}^n$. Let $R \geq (10R_0)^2$, $u \in U_{\Phi_j}^2$ and $v \in U_{\Phi_j}^2$, with $\text{supp } \hat{u} \subset \Lambda_1^*$ and $\text{supp } \hat{v} \subset \Lambda_2^*$. Assuming [Theorem 4.1](#), our goal is to prove that for every $\alpha > 0$ we have

$$\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(I_R \times \mathbb{R}^n)} \lesssim R^\alpha \|u\|_{U_{\Phi_j}^2} \|v\|_{U_{\Phi_j}^2}. \tag{5-1}$$

It is enough to consider the case where u and v are atoms; thus we have the decomposition

$$u = \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f_J, \quad v = \sum_{J'} \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g_{J'},$$

with

$$\sum_J \|f_J\|_{L^2}^2 + \sum_{J'} \|g_{J'}\|_{L^2}^2 \leq 1,$$

and we may assume that $\text{supp } \hat{f}_J \subset \Lambda_1^*$ and $\text{supp } \hat{g}_{J'} \subset \Lambda_2^*$ (using sharp Fourier cutoffs). By translation invariance, the bound (5-1) then follows from

$$\begin{aligned} & \|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(Q_R)} \\ & \lesssim R^\alpha \left(\sum_J \|(1 + R^{-1}|x|)^{-(n+1)} f_J\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{J'} \|(1 + R^{-1}|x|)^{-(n+1)} g_{J'}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned} \tag{5-2}$$

since we can then sum up over the centres of balls (or cubes) of radius R which cover \mathbb{R}^n . The inequality (5-2) is a reflection of the fact that, as u and v are localised to frequencies of size ≈ 1 , we expect that the waves $e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f_J$ should travel with velocity 1. In particular, u and v on Q_R should only depend on the data in $\{|x| \lesssim R\}$. It turns out that this is true, modulo a rapidly decreasing tail.

Let $\rho \in \mathcal{S}$ with $\text{supp } \hat{\rho} \subset \{|\xi| \leq 1\}$ and $\rho \gtrsim 1$ on $|x| \leq 1$. To prove (5-2), we start by noting that since the left-hand integral is only over \mathcal{Q}_R , we may replace uv with $\rho(R^{-1}x)u(t, x)\rho(R^{-1}x)v(y)$. We can write

$$\begin{aligned} \rho\left(\frac{x}{R}\right)(e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f)(x) &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} R^n \hat{\rho}(R(\xi - \eta)) e^{it\Phi_j(\eta)} \hat{f}(\eta) d\eta e^{i\xi \cdot x} d\xi \\ &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} R^n \hat{\rho}(R(\xi - \eta)) \hat{f}(\eta) F(t, R(\xi - \eta), \eta) d\eta e^{i\xi \cdot x} e^{i\Phi_j(\xi)} d\xi, \end{aligned} \tag{5-3}$$

where $F(t, \xi, \eta) = \chi(\xi, \eta)e^{it(\Phi_j(\frac{\xi}{R} + \eta) - \Phi_j(\eta))}$ and $\chi \in C_0^\infty(\{|\xi| \leq 2\} \times (\Lambda_j^* + 1/\mathbf{R}_0))$ with $\chi = 1$ on $\{|\xi| \leq 2\} \times \Lambda_j^*$. The oscillating component of F is essentially constant for $|t| \leq R$. To exploit this, we expand F using a Fourier series to get

$$F(t, \xi, \eta) = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{2n}} c_k(t) e^{ik \cdot (\xi, \eta)}, \quad c_k(t) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} F(t, \xi, \eta) e^{ik \cdot (\xi, \eta)} d\xi d\eta,$$

and by (ii) in Assumption 1, the coefficients satisfy $|c_k(t)| \lesssim_{\mathbf{R}_0, \mathbf{D}_2} (1 + |k_1|)^{-2(n+1)} (1 + |k_2|)^{-2(n+1)}$ with $k = (k_1, k_2)$. Applying this expansion to $\rho(R^{-1}x)u$ and $\rho(R^{-1}x)v$ we obtain the decompositions

$$\begin{aligned} \rho(R^{-1}x)u &= \sum_J \sum_k c_k(t) \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f_{k,J}, \\ \rho(R^{-1}x)v &= \sum_{J'} \sum_k c'_k(t) \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g_{k,J'}, \end{aligned} \tag{5-4}$$

where the coefficients c_k, c'_k are independent of J and J' , and the functions $f_{k,J}$ and $g_{k,J'}$ are given by

$$f_{k,J}(x) = \rho\left(\frac{x}{R} + k_1\right) f_J(x + k_2), \quad g_{k,J'}(x) = \rho\left(\frac{x}{R} + k_1\right) g_{J'}(x + k_2),$$

with $k = (k_1, k_2)$. Note that $\text{supp } \hat{f}_{k,J} \subset \Lambda_1^* + 1/(2\mathbf{R}_0)$ since $R \geq (10\mathbf{R}_0)^2$, thus the $f_{k,J}$ satisfy the support conditions in Theorem 4.1 (with Λ_j^* replaced with $\Lambda_j^* + 1/\mathbf{R}_0$, and \mathbf{R}_0 replaced with $2\mathbf{R}_0$). A similar comment applies to the $g_{k,J'}$. Therefore, plugging the decomposition (5-4) into the left-hand side of (5-2), we deduce via an application of Theorem 4.1 that

$$\begin{aligned} &\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(\mathcal{Q}_R)} \\ &\lesssim \sum_{k,k' \in \mathbb{Z}^n \times \mathbb{Z}^n} (1 + |k|)^{-2(n+1)} (1 + |k'|)^{-2(n+1)} \\ &\quad \times \left\| \sum_{J,J'} \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f_{k,J} \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g_{k',J'} \right\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(\mathcal{Q}_R)} \\ &\lesssim R^\alpha \sum_{k,k'} (1 + |k|)^{-2(n+1)} (1 + |k'|)^{-2(n+1)} \\ &\quad \times \left(\sum_J \|(1 + R^{-1}|x - k_1 + Rk_2|)^{-(n+1)} f_J\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{J'} \|(1 + R^{-1}|x - k'_1 + Rk'_2|)^{-(n+1)} g_{J'}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\lesssim R^\alpha \left(\sum_J \|(1 + R^{-1}|x|)^{-(n+1)} f_J\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{J'} \|(1 + R^{-1}|x|)^{-(n+1)} g_{J'}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain (5-2) and hence (5-1).

Step 2: from $I_R \times \mathbb{R}^n$ to \mathbb{R}^{1+n} . Let $u \in U_{\Phi_1}^2$ and $v \in U_{\Phi_2}^2$, with $\text{supp } \hat{u} \subset \Lambda_1^*$ and $\text{supp } \hat{v} \subset \Lambda_2^*$. Our goal is to show that for every $p > (n + 3)/(n + 1)$

$$\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^p} \lesssim \|u\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{U_{\Phi_2}^2}. \tag{5-5}$$

In fact the argument below gives the marginally stronger (though essentially equivalent) bound

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^p L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} \lesssim \|u\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{U_{\Phi_2}^2}. \tag{5-6}$$

To deduce (5-5) from (5-6), note that the dispersive estimate in Lemma 2.4, together with the abstract Strichartz estimates of [Keel and Tao 1998, Theorem 1.2], implies there exists $1 < a < b < \infty$ such that $\|uv\|_{L_t^a L_x^b} \lesssim 1$. On the other hand, the Fourier support assumptions imply that we have the trivial bound $\|uv\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^p(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})} \lesssim 1$ for every $p \geq 1$. Thus interpolation gives (5-5) from (5-6).

We now turn to the proof of (5-6). As in Step 1, we may assume that u and v are atoms with the decomposition

$$u = \sum_J \mathbb{1}_J(t) e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f_J, \quad v = \sum_{J'} \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g_{J'},$$

with $\text{supp } \hat{f}_J \subset \Lambda_1^*$, $\text{supp } \hat{g}_{J'} \subset \Lambda_2^*$, and

$$\sum_J \|f_J\|_{L^2}^2 + \sum_{J'} \|g_{J'}\|_{L^2}^2 \leq 1.$$

By real interpolation it is enough to show that for every $q > (n + 3)/(n + 1)$ we have

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^{q,\infty} L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} \lesssim 1,$$

where $L_t^{q,\infty}$ is the Lorentz norm. Applying duality, this follows from the estimate

$$\int_\Omega \|uv\|_{L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} dt \lesssim |\Omega|^{\frac{1}{q'}} \tag{5-7}$$

for every measurable $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}$. Define the Fourier localised solution operator

$$\mathcal{U}_j(t)[h] = e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} P_{\Lambda_j^*} h,$$

where we let

$$\widehat{P_{\Lambda_j^*} h}(\xi) = \rho_{\Lambda_j^*}(\xi) \hat{h}(\xi)$$

with $\rho \in C_0^\infty(\Lambda_j^* + 1/(10R_0))$ and $\rho = 1$ on Λ_j^* . If we interpolate Lemma 2.4 with the trivial $L_t^\infty L_x^2$ bound and apply duality, we deduce that for every $1 \leq a \leq 2$

$$\int_{\substack{(t,t') \in \Omega \times \Omega \\ |t-t'| \gtrsim R}} \langle \mathcal{U}_j^*(t)[G(t)], \mathcal{U}_j^*(t')[G(t')] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt dt' \lesssim |\Omega|^2 R^{-\frac{n-1}{2}(\frac{2}{a}-1)} \|G\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^a}^2, \tag{5-8}$$

where \mathcal{U}_j^* denotes the L_x^2 adjoint of \mathcal{U}_j . The dispersive bound (5-8) together with the bilinear estimate (5-1) are the key inequalities required in the proof of (5-7).

We now begin the proof of (5-7). If $|\Omega| \lesssim 1$, then (5-7) follows by putting $uv \in L_t^\infty L_x^{\frac{n+3}{n+1}}$ and using the Sobolev embedding. Thus we may assume that $|\Omega| \gg 1$. Let us set $J'_\Omega := \Omega \cap J'$. An application

of duality gives

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} \|uv\|_{L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} dt &\leq \sup_{\|F\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^{(n+3)/2}} \leq 1} \left| \int_{\Omega} \langle F, uv \rangle_{L_x^2} dt \right| \\ &= \sup_{\|F\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^{(n+3)/2}} \leq 1} \left| \sum_{J'} \int_{J'_\Omega} \langle F, u \mathcal{U}_2(t)[g_{J'}] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt \right| \\ &\lesssim \sup_{\|F\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^{(n+3)/2}} \leq 1} \left(\sum_{J'} \left\| \int_{J'_\Omega} \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

If we expand the square of the L_x^2 norm, we have via (5-8)

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{J'} \left\| \int_{J'_\Omega} \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2 &= \sum_{J'} \int_{t,t' \in J'_\Omega} \langle \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}], \mathcal{U}_2^*(t')[F\bar{u}] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt dt' \\ &= \sum_{J'} \int_{\substack{t,t' \in J'_\Omega \\ |t-t'| \geq R}} \langle \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}], \mathcal{U}_2^*(t')[F\bar{u}] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt dt' \\ &\quad + \sum_{J'} \sum_{|I-I'| \leq R} \int_{J'_\Omega \cap I} \int_{J'_\Omega \cap I'} \langle \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}], \mathcal{U}_2^*(t')[F\bar{u}] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt dt' \\ &\lesssim |\Omega|^2 R^{-\frac{n-1}{2}(a-1)} \|F\bar{u}\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^a}^2 + \sum_{J',I} \left\| \int_{J'_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2 \\ &\lesssim |\Omega|^2 R^{-\frac{2(n-1)}{n+3}} \|F\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^{(n+3)/2}}^2 \|u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2}^2 + \sum_{J',I} \left\| \int_{J'_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\frac{1}{a} = \frac{2}{n+3} + \frac{1}{2}.$$

Here we always take I (and I') to be a decomposition of \mathbb{R} into intervals of size R . We now essentially repeat the previous argument, but expand u instead of v to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{J',I} \left\| \int_{J'_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_2^*(t)[F\bar{u}] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2 &\leq \sup_{\sum_{J',I} \|g_{J',I}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1} \left| \sum_{J',I} \int_{J'_\Omega \cap I} \langle F, \bar{u} \mathcal{U}_2(t)g_{J',I} \rangle_{L_x^2} dt \right|^2 \\ &\lesssim \sup_{\sum_{J',I} \|g_{J',I}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1} \left| \sum_{J,I} \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \langle \mathcal{U}_1^*(t)[F\bar{v}_I], f_J \rangle_{L_x^2} dt \right|^2 \\ &\lesssim \sup_{\sum_{J',I} \|g_{J',I}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1} \sum_J \left\| \sum_I \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_1^*(t)[F\bar{v}_I] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2, \end{aligned}$$

where we take

$$v_I = \sum_{J'} \mathbb{1}_{J'}(t) \mathcal{U}_2(t)g_{J',I}.$$

Again expanding out the L_x^2 norm, and applying (5-8), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_J \left\| \sum_I \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_1^*(t)[F\bar{v}_I] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2 \\ &= \sum_J \sum_{|I-I'| \gg R} \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \int_{J_\Omega \cap I'} \langle \mathcal{U}_1^*(t)[F\bar{v}_I], \mathcal{U}_1(t')[F\bar{v}_{I'}] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt dt' \\ & \quad + \sum_J \sum_{|I-I'| \lesssim R} \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \int_{J_\Omega \cap I'} \langle \mathcal{U}_1^*(t)[F\bar{v}_I], \mathcal{U}_1^*(t')[F\bar{v}_{I'}] \rangle_{L_x^2} dt dt' \\ & \lesssim |\Omega|^2 R^{-\frac{2(n-1)}{n+3}} \|F\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^{(n+3)/2}}^2 \sup_I \|v_I\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2}^2 + \sum_{J,I} \left\| \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_1(t)[Fv_I] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Collecting the above chain of estimates together, and using the fact that

$$\|v_I\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2}^2 \leq \sum_{I,J'} \|g_{J',I}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1$$

together with another application of duality, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_\Omega \|uv\|_{L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} dt & \lesssim |\Omega| R^{-\frac{n-1}{n+3}} + \sup_{\substack{\|F\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^{(n+3)/2}} \leq 1 \\ \sum_{I,J'} \|g_{I,J'}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1}} \left(\sum_{J,I} \left\| \int_{J_\Omega \cap I} \mathcal{U}_1(t)[F\bar{v}_I] dt \right\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ & \leq |\Omega| R^{-\frac{n-1}{n+3}} + \sup_{\substack{\sum_{I,J'} \|g_{I,J'}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \\ \sum_{I,J} \|f_{I,J}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1}} \sum_I \int_{\Omega \cap I} \|u_I v_I\|_{L_x^{(n+3)/(n+2)}} dt, \end{aligned}$$

where we define $u_I = \sum_{I,J} \mathbb{1}_J(t) \mathcal{U}_1(t)[f_{I,J}]$. Observe that

$$\sum_I \|u_I\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^2}^2 \leq \sum_{I,J} \|f_{I,J}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \leq 1,$$

and that u_I satisfies the support properties in Theorem 4.1 (with Λ_j^* replaced by $\Lambda_j^* + 1/(10\mathbf{R}_0)$, and \mathbf{R}_0 replaced by $2\mathbf{R}_0$). A similar comment applies to v_I . Consequently, an application of (5-1) gives for any $\alpha > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_I \int_{\Omega \cap I} \|u_I v_I\|_{L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} dt & \leq |\Omega|^{\frac{2}{n+3}} \sum_I \|u_I v_I\|_{L_{t,x}^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(I \times \mathbb{R}^n)} \\ & \lesssim |\Omega|^{\frac{2}{n+3}} R^\alpha \left(\sum_{I,J} \|f_{I,J}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{I,J'} \|g_{I,J'}\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq |\Omega|^{\frac{2}{n+3}} R^\alpha \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\int_\Omega \|uv\|_{L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}} dt \lesssim |\Omega| R^{-\frac{n-1}{n+3}} + |\Omega|^{\frac{2}{n+3}} R^\alpha.$$

To complete the proof, we choose $R = |\Omega|^C$ with $C > 0$ sufficiently large so that $|\Omega| R^{-\frac{n-1}{n+3}} \leq |\Omega|^{\frac{1}{q'}}$. On the other hand, since $q > (n+3)/(n+1)$, we can take

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{2C} \left(\frac{n+1}{n+3} - \frac{1}{q} \right),$$

which implies

$$|\Omega|^{\frac{2}{n+3}} R^\alpha = |\Omega|^{\frac{2}{n+3} + \alpha C} \leq |\Omega|^{\frac{1}{q'}}.$$

Therefore we obtain (5-7) as required.

Step 3: from U_Φ^2 to V_Φ^2 . Let $p > (n+3)/(n+1)$, $u \in V_{\Phi_1}^2$ and $v \in V_{\Phi_2}^2$, with $\text{supp } \hat{u} \subset \Lambda_1^*$ and $\text{supp } \hat{v} \subset \Lambda_2^*$. An application of [Koch and Tataru 2005, Lemma 6.4]; see also [Hadac et al. 2009, Propositions 2.5 and 2.20], gives a decomposition $u = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{N}} u_k$ and $v = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{N}} v_k$ such that u_k, v_k retain the correct Fourier support properties (we can just use sharp Fourier cutoffs here) and for any $r \geq 2$ we have the bounds

$$\|u_k\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^r} \lesssim 2^{k(\frac{2}{r}-1)} \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2}, \quad \|v_k\|_{U_{\Phi_2}^r} \lesssim 2^{k(\frac{2}{r}-1)} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}.$$

Let $(n+3)/(n+1) < q < p$, and take $\theta = q/p < 1$. Then an application of (5-5) (with $p = q$), together with the convexity of L^p norms, gives

$$\begin{aligned} \|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^p} &\leq \sum_{k,k'} \|u_k v_{k'}\|_{L_{t,x}^p} \leq \sum_{k,k'} \|u_k v_{k'}\|_{L_{t,x}^q}^\theta \|u_k v_{k'}\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty}^{1-\theta} \\ &\leq \sum_{k',k} (\|u_k\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v_{k'}\|_{U_{\Phi_2}^2})^\theta (\|u_k\|_{U_{\Phi_1}^\infty} \|v_{k'}\|_{U_{\Phi_2}^\infty})^{1-\theta} \\ &\lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2} \sum_{k,k'} 2^{-k(1-\theta)} 2^{-k'(1-\theta)} \lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the Sobolev embedding and the fact that the Fourier support of u, v is contain in the unit ball to control the $L_{t,x}^\infty$ norm. Thus Theorem 1.1 follows. □

Remark 5.1. The argument in Step 3 above, using (5-6), also implies the slightly stronger estimate

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^p L_x^{(n+3)/(n+1)}(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})} \leq C \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}.$$

This is well known in the case of homogeneous solutions; see, e.g., [Tao 2003]. However, the estimate in the endpoint $p = q = (n+3)/(n+1)$ remains open. For homogeneous solutions it is known only in the case of the cone [Tao 2001].

Remark 5.2. In fact, since Tao’s endpoint result [2001, Theorem 1.1] holds for Hilbert-space-valued waves, we observe that one can deduce the U^2 -estimate for the cone directly. This follows by noting that, given U^2 -atoms $u = \sum_{I \in \mathcal{I}} \mathbb{1}_I u_I$ and $v = \sum_{J \in \mathcal{J}} \mathbb{1}_J v_J$, we have

$$|uv| \leq \left(\sum_{I \in \mathcal{I}} |u_I|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{J \in \mathcal{J}} |v_J|^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = |U||V|.$$

with ℓ^2 -valued waves U and V .

6. Mixed norms and generalisations to small scales

We now give some consequences of the bilinear estimate in Theorem 1.1. Namely, we state an extension to mixed $L_t^q L_x^r$ spaces, and, in the case of the hyperboloid, we give a small-scale version of Theorem 1.1. The small-scale estimate will play a key role in our application to the Dirac–Klein–Gordon system.

6A. Mixed norms. Let Φ_1 and Φ_2 be phases satisfying [Assumption 1](#). A standard TT^* argument, see for instance [\[Keel and Tao 1998\]](#), together with [Lemma 2.4](#) implies that, provided

$$\frac{1}{q} + \frac{n-1}{2r} \leq \frac{n-1}{4}$$

and $q > 2$, we have the Strichartz-type bound

$$\|e^{it\Phi_j(-i\nabla)} f\|_{L_t^q L_x^r(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})} \lesssim \|f\|_{L_x^2}. \tag{6-1}$$

As in Step 3 of the proof of the globalisation lemma, by decomposing V^2 into U^a atoms, see [\[Koch and Tataru 2005, Lemma 6.4\]](#) or [\[Hadac et al. 2009, Propositions 2.5 and 2.20\]](#), we see that

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^q L_x^b} \lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}$$

for any

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{n-1}{2b} \leq \frac{n-1}{2}.$$

Interpolating with [Theorem 1.1](#) then gives the following mixed norm version.

Corollary 6.1. *Let $n \geq 2$ and assume that $a > 1$,*

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{n+1}{2b} < \frac{n+1}{2},$$

and

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{n-1}{4b} < \begin{cases} \frac{n+1}{4}, & n \geq 3, \\ \frac{1}{2} + \frac{5}{12b}, & n = 2. \end{cases} \tag{6-2}$$

Let Φ_1, Φ_2 , and u, v be as in the statement of [Theorem 1.1](#). Then

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^a L_x^b} \lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}.$$

Remark 6.2. Let $p > (n+3)/(n+1)$. It is possible to deduce a weaker version of [Theorem 1.1](#) and [Corollary 6.1](#) directly from the homogeneous estimate

$$\|e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g\|_{L_{t,x}^p(\mathbb{R}^{1+n})} \lesssim \|f\|_{L_x^2} \|g\|_{L_x^2}, \tag{6-3}$$

where the phases satisfy the conditions in [Assumption 1](#), and $f, g \in L^2$ have the required support conditions. We sketch the argument as follows. By interpolating [\(6-3\)](#) with the trivial $L_t^\infty L_x^2$ bound, we deduce that for every $a > 2$ we have

$$\|e^{it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} f e^{it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} g\|_{L_t^a L_x^{(n+1)/n}} \lesssim \|f\|_{L_x^2} \|g\|_{L_x^2}.$$

By decomposing V^2 functions into U^a atoms [\[Koch and Tataru 2005; Hadac et al. 2009; Koch et al. 2014\]](#) and using the convexity of the L^p spaces, we see that for $a > 2$

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^a L_x^{(n+1)/n}} \lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}.$$

Consequently, as in the proof of [Corollary 6.1](#), by interpolating with the standard Strichartz estimates, we obtain

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^a L_x^b} \lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\Phi_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\Phi_2}^2}$$

provided that $a > 1$,

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{n+1}{2b} < \frac{n+1}{2},$$

and

$$\frac{1}{a} < \begin{cases} \frac{n-1}{n+3} \left(\frac{n}{2} - \frac{n+1}{2b} \right) + \frac{1}{2}, & n \geq 3, \\ \frac{1}{2}, & n = 2. \end{cases} \tag{6-4}$$

In particular, the homogeneous bounds contained in [[Lee and Vargas 2010](#); [Bejenaru 2017](#)] imply a weaker version of our main result, with (6-2) in [Corollary 6.1](#) replaced with (6-4). Note that condition (6-4) is much more restrictive than (6-2). This is most apparent in the low-dimensional cases; for instance if $n = 2$ then [Corollary 6.4](#) allows $a < 2$, while (6-4) only allows the somewhat trivial (from a V^2 perspective) $a > 2$. To summarise, our main result, [Theorem 1.1](#) not only clarifies the dependence of the constant on the global properties of the phases Φ_1 and Φ_2 , but also presents a significant strengthening of the allowed exponents for the V^2 estimate.

We observe that the above argument, namely deducing a V^2 bound directly from the homogeneous estimate, has been used in [[Sterbenz and Tataru 2010](#), Lemma 5.7 and its proof] in the case of the cone.

Remark 6.3. In the special case of the hyperboloid, $\Phi_j = \langle \xi \rangle_{m_j}$, or the paraboloid, $\Phi_j = |\xi|^2$, the Strichartz bound (6-1) holds in the larger region

$$\frac{1}{q} + \frac{n}{2r} \leq \frac{n}{4}.$$

This can be used to improve the range of exponents in [Corollary 6.1](#); in particular (6-2) can be replaced with

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{n}{3b} < \frac{n+1}{3}.$$

However, it is important to note that, in the case of the hyperboloid, some care has to be taken as the constant will now depend on the masses m_j .

6B. Small scale bilinear restriction estimates. In the case of hyperboloids we now generalise [Theorem 1.1](#), similarly to [[Lee and Vargas 2008](#)] in the case of the cone. Given $0 < \alpha \lesssim 1$, we define \mathcal{C}_α to be a collection of finitely overlapping caps of radius α on the sphere \mathbb{S}^{n-1} . If $\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha$, we define $\omega(\kappa)$ to be the centre of the cap κ .

We consider the case $\Phi_j(\xi) = -\pm_j \langle \xi \rangle$ and define the corresponding $V_{\pm,m}^2$ space as $V_{\pm,m}^2 = V_{\Phi_j}^2$; thus

$$\|u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} = \|e^{\pm it \langle \nabla \rangle_m} u(t)\|_{V^2}. \tag{6-5}$$

We define the corresponding $U_{\pm,m}^2$ space similarly. Rescaling [Theorem 1.1](#) then gives the following optimal result.

Corollary 6.4. *Let $p > (n + 3)/(n + 1)$, $0 \leq m_1, m_2 \leq 1$:*

(i) *For any $\lambda \gtrsim m_1 + m_2$, $(m_1 + m_2)/\lambda \lesssim \alpha \lesssim 1$, $\kappa, \kappa' \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha$ with $\theta(\pm_1\kappa, \pm_2\kappa') \approx \alpha$, and*

$$\text{supp } \hat{u} \subset \left\{ |\xi| \approx \lambda, \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \in \kappa \right\}, \quad \text{supp } \hat{v} \subset \left\{ |\xi| \approx \lambda, \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \in \kappa' \right\},$$

we have the bilinear estimate

$$\|uv\|_{L^p_{t,x}} \lesssim \alpha^{n-1-\frac{n+1}{p}} \lambda^{n-\frac{n+1}{p}} \|u\|_{V^2_{\pm_1, m_1}} \|v\|_{V^2_{\pm_2, m_2}}.$$

(ii) *For any $\lambda \gtrsim m_1 + m_2$, $0 < \alpha \ll (m_1 + m_2)/\lambda$, $\kappa, \kappa' \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha$, $c_1 \approx c_2 \approx \lambda$ with*

$$\theta(\pm_1\kappa, \pm_2\kappa') \lesssim \alpha, \quad |m_1c_1 - m_2c_2| \approx \alpha\lambda^2,$$

and

$$\text{supp } \hat{u} \subset \left\{ \left| |\xi \cdot \omega(\kappa)| - c_1 \right| \ll \alpha\lambda^2, \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \in \kappa \right\}, \quad \text{supp } \hat{v} \subset \left\{ \left| |\xi \cdot \omega(\kappa')| - c_2 \right| \ll \alpha\lambda^2, \frac{\xi}{|\xi|} \in \kappa' \right\},$$

we have the bilinear estimate

$$\|uv\|_{L^p_{t,x}} \lesssim \alpha^{n-\frac{n+2}{p}} \lambda^{n+1-\frac{n+2}{p}} \|u\|_{V^2_{\pm_1, m_1}} \|v\|_{V^2_{\pm_2, m_2}}.$$

Proof. Fix $\pm_1 = +$ and $\pm_2 = \pm$, the remaining cases follow from a reflection. We start with (i). If $\alpha \approx 1$, then the estimate follows from rescaling in x together with an application of [Theorem 1.1](#). Thus we may assume that $0 < \alpha \ll 1$, and after a rotation, that κ is centred at e_1 and κ' is centred at $\pm(1 - \alpha^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}e_1 + \alpha e_2$. Similarly to [\[Lee and Vargas 2008\]](#), we define the rescaled functions

$$u_{\lambda, \alpha}(t, x) = u\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda}, \frac{x_1}{\lambda} + \frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda}, \frac{x'}{\alpha\lambda}\right), \quad v_{\lambda, \alpha}(t, x) = v\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda}, \frac{x_1}{\lambda} + \frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda}, \frac{x'}{\alpha\lambda}\right)$$

(where we write $x = (x_1, x') \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$) and the phases

$$\Phi_1(\xi) = \frac{-1}{\alpha^2\lambda} ((m_1^2 + \lambda^2\xi_1^2 + \alpha^2\lambda^2|\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \lambda\xi_1), \quad \Phi_2(\xi) = \frac{\mp 1}{\alpha^2\lambda} ((m_2^2 + \lambda^2\xi_1^2 + \alpha^2\lambda^2|\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mp \lambda\xi_1),$$

with associated sets

$$\Lambda_1 = \{\xi_1 \approx 1, |\xi'| \ll 1\}, \quad \Lambda_2 = \{\xi_1 \approx \pm 1, \xi_2 \approx 1, |\xi''| \ll 1\}$$

where we write $\xi = (\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi'') \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-2}$. A computation gives $\text{supp } \hat{u}_{\lambda, \alpha} \subset \Lambda_1$ and

$$[e^{-it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} u_{\lambda, \alpha}(t)](x) = \left[e^{i\frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda} \langle \nabla \rangle_{m_1}} u\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda}\right) \right] \left(\frac{x_1}{\lambda}, \frac{x'}{\alpha\lambda}\right).$$

Similarly we can check that $\text{supp } \hat{v}_{\lambda, \alpha} \subset \Lambda_2$ and

$$[e^{-it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} v_{\lambda, \alpha}(t)](x) = \left[e^{\pm i\frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda} \langle \nabla \rangle_{m_2}} v\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2\lambda}\right) \right] \left(\frac{x_1}{\lambda}, \frac{x'}{\alpha\lambda}\right).$$

Therefore, after rescaling together with an application of [Theorem 1.1](#), it is enough to check that the phases Φ_j satisfy [Assumption 1](#) on the sets Λ_j . To this end, we start by noting that we can write

$$\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) = \frac{1}{(\lambda^{-2}m_1^2 + \xi_1^2 + \alpha^2|\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left(\frac{-(m_1/(\alpha\lambda))^2 - |\xi'|^2}{(\lambda^{-2}m_1^2 + \xi_1^2 + \alpha^2|\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \xi_1}, \xi' \right),$$

which shows that (ii) in [Assumption 1](#) holds with D_2 depending only on N and n . A similar argument shows that Φ_2 satisfies (ii) in [Assumption 1](#). On the other hand, to check condition (i) in [Assumption 1](#), we invoke [Lemma 2.1](#). First, we observe that for any $\xi \in \Lambda_1$, $\eta \in \Lambda_2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)| &\geq |\partial_2\Phi_1(\xi) - \partial_2\Phi_2(\eta)| \\ &= \left| \frac{\xi_2}{(\lambda^{-2}m_1^2 + \xi_1^2 + \alpha^2|\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \mp \frac{\eta_2}{(\lambda^{-2}m_2^2 + \eta_1^2 + \alpha^2|\eta'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right| \gtrsim 1, \end{aligned}$$

and hence we can take $A_1 \approx 1$. It remains to check (2-2) in [Lemma 2.1](#). We make use of the following elementary inequality; if $(h^*, a^*) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \times \mathbb{R}^1$ and $x, y \in \{z \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} : |z| = |z - h^*| + a^*\}$, then

$$\left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2 \geq \frac{1}{4|x||y|} \left(\frac{|x \wedge y|^2}{|x||y|} + \frac{|(x - h^*) \wedge (y - h^*)|^2}{|x - h^*||y - h^*|} \right). \tag{6-6}$$

To prove (6-6), we start by observing that since $x, y \in \{z \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} : |z| = |z - h^*| + a^*\}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2 &= \frac{1}{|x||y|} (|x - y|^2 - ||x| - |y||^2) \\ &= \frac{1}{|x||y|} (|(x - h^*) - (y - h^*)|^2 - ||x - h^*| - |y - h^*||^2) \\ &= \frac{|x - h^*||y - h^*|}{|x||y|} \left| \frac{x - h^*}{|x - h^*|} - \frac{y - h^*}{|y - h^*|} \right|^2. \end{aligned}$$

The inequality (6-6) now follows from the identity $|\omega - \omega^*|^2 \geq \frac{1}{2}|\omega \wedge \omega^*|^2$ for $\omega, \omega^* \in \mathbb{S}^{n+1}$. We now return to checking (2-2) in [Lemma 2.1](#); we only check the case $j = 1$ as the remaining case is identical. Let $\xi, \eta \in \Sigma_1(a, h)$ for some $(a, h) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ such that $\xi - h, \eta - h \in \Lambda_2$. A computation gives

$$\begin{aligned} &|(\nabla\Phi_j(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_j(\eta)) \cdot (\xi - \eta)| \\ &= \alpha^{-2} \left| \left(\frac{(\xi_1, \alpha^2\xi')}{|(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \xi_1, \alpha^2\xi')|} - \frac{(\eta_1, \alpha^2\eta')}{|(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \eta_1, \alpha^2\eta')|} \right) \cdot (\xi - \eta) \right| \\ &= \alpha^{-2} \frac{|(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \xi_1, \alpha^2\xi')| + |(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \eta_1, \alpha^2\eta')|}{2} \left| \frac{(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \xi_1, \alpha^2\xi')}{|(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \xi_1, \alpha^2\xi')|} - \frac{(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \eta_1, \alpha^2\eta')}{|(\lambda^{-1}m_1, \eta_1, \alpha^2\eta')|} \right|^2 \\ &\approx \alpha^{-2} \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2, \end{aligned} \tag{6-7}$$

where we take $x = (\lambda^{-1}m_1, \xi_1, \alpha^2\xi')$ and $y = (\lambda^{-1}m_1, \eta_1, \alpha^2\eta')$. Note that the condition $\xi \in \Sigma_1(a, h)$ becomes $|x| = |x - h^*| + a^*$ with $h^* = (\lambda^{-1}m_2 - \lambda^{-1}m_1, h_1, \alpha h')$ and $a^* = \alpha^2 a$. In particular, since

$|x| \approx |y| \approx |x - h^*| \approx |y - h^*| \approx 1$, an application of (6-6) gives

$$\left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2 \gtrsim |x \wedge y|^2 + |(x - h^*) \wedge (y - h^*)|^2. \tag{6-8}$$

The required bound (2-2) with $A_2 \approx 1$ now follows in the region $|\xi_1 - \eta_1| \lesssim |\xi' - \eta'|$ by noting that

$$|x \wedge y| \geq \alpha |\xi_1 \eta' - \eta_1 \xi'| \geq \alpha (|\xi' - \eta'| |\xi_1| - |\xi'| |\xi_1 - \eta_1|) \approx \alpha |\xi' - \eta'| \approx \alpha |\xi - \eta|$$

and applying the inequalities (6-7) and (6-8). On the other hand, if $|\xi_1 - \eta_1| \gg |\xi' - \eta'|$, then as $\xi - h, \eta - h \in \Lambda_2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |(x - h^*) \wedge (y - h^*)| &\geq \alpha |(\xi_1 - h_1)(\eta_2 - h_2) - (\eta_1 - h_1)(\xi_2 - h_2)| \\ &\geq \alpha (|\xi_1 - \eta_1| |\eta_2 - h_2| - |\xi_2 - \eta_2| |\eta_1 - h_1|) \approx \alpha |\xi_1 - \eta_1| \approx \alpha |\xi - \eta|, \end{aligned}$$

which again gives (2-2) with $A_2 \approx 1$. Thus the phases Φ_j satisfy Assumption 1 with $D_1 \approx D_2 \approx 1$ and therefore part (i) follows.

We now turn to the proof of part (ii). The argument is similar to (i), but we need a further rescaling to exploit the radial separation condition. As before, after rotating, we may assume that $\omega(\kappa_1) = e_1$. Define the rescaled functions

$$u_{\lambda, \alpha}^\#(t, x) = u\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2 \lambda}, \frac{x_1}{\alpha \lambda^2} + \frac{t c_1}{\alpha^2 \lambda \langle c_1 \rangle_{m_1}}, \frac{x'}{\alpha \lambda}\right), \quad v_{\lambda, \alpha}^\#(t, x) = v\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2 \lambda}, \frac{x_1}{\alpha \lambda^2} + \frac{t c_1}{\alpha^2 \lambda \langle c_1 \rangle_{m_1}}, \frac{x'}{\alpha \lambda}\right)$$

(where, as previously, we write $x = (x_1, x') \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1}$) and the phases

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_1(\xi) &= \frac{-1}{\alpha^2 \lambda} \left((m_1^2 + (\alpha \lambda^2 \xi_1)^2 + \alpha^2 \lambda^2 |\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{\alpha \lambda^2 c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle_{m_1}} \xi_1 \right), \\ \Phi_2(\xi) &= \frac{\mp 1}{\alpha^2 \lambda} \left((m_2^2 + (\alpha \lambda^2 \xi_1)^2 + \alpha^2 \lambda^2 |\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mp \frac{\alpha \lambda^2 c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle_{m_1}} \xi_1 \right) \end{aligned}$$

with associated sets

$$\Lambda_1 = \left\{ \left| \xi_1 - \frac{1}{\alpha \lambda^2} c_1 \right| \ll 1, |\xi'| \ll 1 \right\}, \quad \Lambda_2 = \left\{ \left| \xi_1 \mp \frac{1}{\alpha \lambda^2} c_2 \right| \ll 1, |\xi'| \lesssim 1 \right\}.$$

As previously, a computation shows that $\text{supp } \hat{u}_{\lambda, \alpha}^\# \subset \Lambda_1$, $\text{supp } \hat{v}_{\lambda, \alpha}^\# \subset \Lambda_2$ and we have the identities

$$\begin{aligned} [e^{-it\Phi_1(-i\nabla)} u_{\lambda, \alpha}^\#(t)](x) &= \left[e^{it\langle \nabla \rangle_{m_1}} u\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2 \lambda}\right) \right] \left(\frac{x_1}{\alpha \lambda^2}, \frac{x'}{\alpha \lambda} \right), \\ [e^{-it\Phi_2(-i\nabla)} v_{\lambda, \alpha}^\#(t)](x) &= \left[e^{\pm it\langle \nabla \rangle_{m_2}} v\left(\frac{t}{\alpha^2 \lambda}\right) \right] \left(\frac{x_1}{\alpha \lambda^2}, \frac{x'}{\alpha \lambda} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, as in the proof of (i), after rescaling and an application of Theorem 1.1, it is enough to check that the phases Φ_j satisfy Assumption 1 on the sets Λ_j . To this end, note that we can write

$$\partial_1 \Phi_1 = \frac{m_1^2 / (\alpha \lambda^3) ((\alpha \lambda^2 \xi_1)^2 - c_1^2) - (c_1 / \lambda)^2 \alpha \lambda |\xi'|^2}{f(\alpha \lambda \xi_1, \alpha \xi')}$$

for some smooth function f with $f \approx 1$ on Λ_1 . Since $\partial_{\xi_1}^M [(\alpha\lambda^2\xi_1)^2 - c_1^2] \lesssim \alpha\lambda^3$ for all $M \geq 0$ and $\xi_1 \in \Lambda$, we see that Φ_1 satisfies (ii) in Assumption 1 with constant depending only on n and N . A similar argument, using the fact that

$$\frac{\lambda}{\alpha} \left| \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle_{m_1}} - \frac{c_2}{\langle c_2 \rangle_{m_2}} \right| \approx 1,$$

shows that Φ_2 also satisfies (ii) in Assumption 1. On the other hand, to check (i) in Assumption 1, we use Lemma 2.1. Concerning the transversality condition (2-1), we observe that for $\xi \in \Lambda_1$, $\eta \in \Lambda_2$, we have $|\xi_1| \approx |\eta_1| \approx 1/(\alpha\lambda)$ and

$$|\xi_1^2 m_2^2 - \eta_1^2 m_1^2| \approx \frac{m_1 + m_2}{\alpha\lambda}, \quad \alpha^2 |\xi_1^2 |\eta'|^2 - \eta_1^2 |\xi'|^2| \lesssim \lambda^{-2} \ll \lambda^{-2} \frac{m_1 + m_2}{\alpha\lambda}.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_2(\eta)| &= \left| \frac{(\lambda^2\xi_1, \xi')}{(\lambda^{-2}m_1^2 + \alpha^2\lambda^2\xi_1^2 + \alpha^2|\xi'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \mp \frac{(\lambda^2\eta_1, \eta')}{(\lambda^{-2}m_2^2 + \alpha^2\lambda^2\eta_1^2 + \alpha^2|\eta'|^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right| \\ &\geq \lambda^3\alpha |\xi_1^2(\lambda^{-2}m_2^2 + \alpha^2\lambda^2\eta_1^2 + \alpha^2|\eta'|^2) - \eta_1^2(\lambda^{-2}m_1^2 + \alpha^2\lambda^2\xi_1^2 + \alpha^2|\xi'|^2)| \\ &\approx m_1 + m_2 \gtrsim 1, \end{aligned}$$

so that (2-1) holds with $A_1 \approx 1$. We now check the curvature condition (2-2) for $j = 1$. Let $\xi, \eta \in \Sigma_1(a, h)$. Repeating the computation (6-7) we deduce that

$$|(\nabla\Phi_1(\xi) - \nabla\Phi_1(\eta)) \cdot (\xi - \eta)| \approx \alpha^{-2} \left| \frac{x}{|x|} - \frac{y}{|y|} \right|^2 \gtrsim \alpha^{-2} (|x \wedge y|^2 + |(x - h^*) \wedge (y - h^*)|^2),$$

where $x = (\lambda^{-1}m_1, \alpha\lambda\xi_1, \alpha\xi')$, $y = (\lambda^{-1}m_1, \alpha\lambda\eta_1, \alpha\eta')$, $h^* = (\lambda^{-1}m_2 - \lambda^{-1}m_1, \alpha\lambda h_1, \alpha h')$, and we used the fact that $x, y, x - h^*, y - h^*$ all have length 1. It thus remains to show that

$$|x \wedge y| + |(x - h^*) \wedge (y - h^*)| \gtrsim \alpha|\xi - \xi'|$$

since then (2-2) holds with $A_2 \approx 1$. If $|\xi_1 - \eta_1| \lesssim |\xi' - \eta'|$ we simply observe as previously that

$$|x \wedge y| \geq \alpha|\alpha\lambda\xi_1\eta' - \alpha\lambda\eta_1\xi'| \geq \alpha(|\xi' - \eta'| \alpha\lambda |\xi_1| - |\xi'| \alpha\lambda |\xi_1 - \eta_1|) \approx \alpha|\xi' - \eta'| \approx \alpha|\xi - \eta|$$

On the other hand, if $|\xi_1 - \eta_1| \gtrsim |\xi' - \eta'|$, then as $\xi - h, \eta - h \in \Lambda_2$, we have

$$|x \wedge y| + |(x - h^*) \wedge (y - h^*)| \geq \alpha m_1 |\xi_1 - \eta_1| + \alpha m_2 |(\xi_1 - h_1) - (\eta_1 - h_2)| \gtrsim \alpha|\xi - \eta|.$$

An identical argument shows that Φ_2 also satisfies the curvature condition. Thus the phases Φ_j satisfy Assumption 1 with $D_1 \approx D_2 \approx 1$ and therefore part (ii) follows. \square

The α and λ dependence in Corollary 6.4 is sharp. At least for (ii), this can be seen with the following example. Let

$$\Omega_j = \{|\xi_1 - c_j| \ll \alpha\lambda^2, |\xi'| \ll \alpha\lambda\},$$

with $|c_1 - c_2| \lesssim \alpha\lambda^2$, $c_1 \approx c_2 \approx \lambda$, and $\alpha \ll \lambda^{-1}$. Define $\hat{f}(\xi) = \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_1}(\xi)$, $\hat{g}(\xi) = \mathbb{1}_{\Omega_2}(\xi)$ and

$$u = e^{it\langle \nabla \rangle} f, \quad v = e^{it\langle \nabla \rangle} g.$$

Then

$$\|u\|_{V_{\langle \nabla \rangle}^2} = \|f\|_{L_x^2} = |\Omega_1|^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

and similarly $\|v\|_{V_{\langle \nabla \rangle}^2} = |\Omega_2|^{\frac{1}{2}}$. On the other hand we have

$$(uv)(t, x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} \hat{u}(t, \xi) \hat{v}(t, \eta) e^{ix \cdot (\xi + \eta)} d\xi d\eta = \int_{\Omega_1} \int_{\Omega_2} e^{it((\xi) + (\eta))} e^{ix \cdot (\xi + \eta)} d\xi d\eta.$$

The idea is to try and find a set $A \subset \mathbb{R}^{1+n}$ such that the phase is essentially constant for $(t, x) \in A$. We start by noting that for $\xi \in \Omega_1$ we have

$$\langle \xi \rangle - \frac{1 + c_1 \xi_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} \approx \lambda^{-3} |(1 + |\xi|^2)(1 + c_1^2) - (1 + c_1 \xi_1)^2| = \lambda^{-3} |(\xi_1 - c_1)^2 + (1 + c_1^2)|\xi'|^2| \approx \alpha^2 \lambda,$$

and hence

$$\left| \langle \xi \rangle - \langle c_1 \rangle^{-1} - \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} \xi_1 \right| \lesssim \alpha^2 \lambda.$$

Similarly, since

$$\left| \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} - \frac{c_2}{\langle c_2 \rangle} \right| \approx \lambda^{-2} |c_1 \langle c_2 \rangle - c_2 \langle c_1 \rangle| \approx \lambda^{-3} |c_1 - c_2| \approx \frac{\alpha}{\lambda},$$

we deduce that for $\eta \in \Omega_2$

$$\left| \langle \eta \rangle - \langle c_2 \rangle^{-1} - \left(\frac{c_2}{\langle c_2 \rangle} - \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} \right) c_2 - \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} \eta_1 \right| \leq \left| \langle \eta \rangle - \langle c_2 \rangle^{-1} - \frac{c_2}{\langle c_2 \rangle} \eta_1 \right| + \left| \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} - \frac{c_2}{\langle c_2 \rangle} \right| |\eta_1 - c_2| \lesssim \alpha^2 \lambda.$$

In particular, for $|t| \ll (\alpha^2 \lambda)^{-1}$, $|x_1 + (c_1/\langle c_1 \rangle)t| \ll (\alpha \lambda^2)^{-1}$, and $|x'| \ll (\alpha \lambda)^{-1}$, the phase is essentially constant and hence

$$\begin{aligned} |(uv)(t, x)| &= \left| \int_{\Omega_1} \int_{\Omega_2} e^{it((\xi) - \langle c_1 \rangle^{-1} - \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} \xi_1)} e^{it((\eta) - \langle c_2 \rangle^{-1} - (\frac{c_2}{\langle c_2 \rangle} - \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle})c_2 - \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle} \eta_1)} \right. \\ &\quad \left. \times e^{i(x_1 + t \frac{c_1}{\langle c_1 \rangle})(\xi_1 + \eta_1 - c_1 - c_2) + x' \cdot (\xi' + \eta')} d\xi d\eta \right| \\ &\gtrsim |\Omega_1| |\Omega_2|, \end{aligned}$$

which then implies

$$\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^p} \gtrsim (\alpha^{n+2} \lambda^{n+2})^{-\frac{1}{p}} \times |\Omega_1| |\Omega_2|.$$

Therefore, if the estimate

$$\|uv\|_{L_{t,x}^p} \leq C(\alpha, \lambda) \|u\|_{V_{\langle \nabla \rangle}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\langle \nabla \rangle}^2}$$

holds, then we must have

$$(\alpha \lambda)^{-\frac{n+2}{p}} |\Omega_1| |\Omega_2| \lesssim C |\Omega_1|^{\frac{1}{2}} |\Omega_2|^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Since $|\Omega_1| \approx |\Omega_2| \approx \alpha^n \lambda^{n+1}$, after rearranging, this becomes $C \gtrsim \alpha^{-\frac{n+2}{p}} \lambda^{n+1 - \frac{n+2}{p}}$, which matches the bound obtained in [Corollary 6.4](#).

7. The Dirac–Klein–Gordon system

We now set up notation and reduce the DKG system to the first-order system (7-3). We then give the proof of Theorem 1.2, up to the crucial nonlinear estimates, which are postponed to Section 8. In the remainder of this article, as we now only consider the DKG system, the dimension is fixed to $n = 3$.

7A. Notation and setup. Fix a smooth function $\rho \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ such that $\text{supp } \rho \subset \{\frac{1}{2} < t < 2\}$ and

$$\sum_{\lambda \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}} \rho\left(\frac{t}{\lambda}\right) = 1,$$

and let $\rho_1 = \sum_{\lambda \leq 1} \rho(t/\lambda)$ with $\rho_1(0) = 1$. Similarly, we let Q_μ be a finitely overlapping collection of cubes of diameter $\mu/1000$ covering \mathbb{R}^3 , and fix $(\rho_q)_{q \in Q_\mu}$ to be a corresponding subordinate partition of unity. We now define the standard dyadic Fourier cutoffs, for $\lambda \in 2^{\mathbb{N}}$, $\lambda > 1$, $q \in Q$, $d \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}$

$$P_\lambda = \rho\left(\frac{|-i\nabla|}{\lambda}\right), \quad P_1 = \rho_1(|-i\nabla|), \quad P_q = \rho_q(|-i\nabla|), \quad C_d^{\pm,m} = \rho\left(\frac{-i\partial_t \pm \langle -i\nabla \rangle_m}{d}\right).$$

We also let $C_{\leq d}^{\pm,m} = \sum_{d' \leq d} C_{d'}^{\pm,m}$, and any related multipliers such as $C_{\geq d}^{\pm,m}$ are defined analogously. To simplify notation somewhat, we make the convention that

$$C_d = C_d^{+,1}, \quad C_d^\pm = \Pi_\pm C_d^{\pm,M},$$

where M will denote the mass of the spinor in (1-3) and Π_\pm is as defined below. Given $\alpha \leq 1$, we let $(\rho_\kappa)_{\kappa \in C_\alpha}$ be a smooth partition of unity subordinate to the conic sectors $\{\xi \neq 0, \xi/|\xi| \in \kappa\}$, and define the angular Fourier localisation multipliers as

$$R_\kappa = \rho_\kappa(-i\nabla).$$

We use the well-known fact that for any $1 \leq p, q \leq \infty$ the modulation cutoff multipliers are uniformly disposable in $L_t^q L_x^r$ for certain scales; namely we have the bounds

$$\|C_d^{\pm,m} P_\lambda R_\kappa u\|_{L_t^q L_x^r} + \|C_{\leq d}^{\pm,m} P_\lambda R_\kappa u\|_{L_t^q L_x^r} \lesssim \|P_\lambda R_\kappa u\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}, \tag{7-1}$$

provided that $\kappa \in C_\alpha$ and $d \gtrsim \alpha^2 \lambda$ and $\alpha \gtrsim \lambda^{-1}$; see, e.g., [Bejenaru and Herr 2015, Lemma 4.1]. Similarly, by writing

$$C_d^{\pm,m} = e^{\mp it \langle \nabla \rangle_m} \rho\left(\frac{-i\partial_t}{d}\right) e^{\pm it \langle \nabla \rangle_m},$$

and using the fact that convolution with $L_t^1(\mathbb{R})$ functions is bounded on V^2 , we deduce that for every $d \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}$

$$\|C_{\leq d}^{\pm,m} u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} \lesssim \|u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2}. \tag{7-2}$$

To deal with solutions to the Dirac equation, we follow the, by now, standard approach used in [D’Ancona et al. 2007; Bejenaru and Herr 2017] and define the projections

$$\Pi_\pm(\xi) = \frac{1}{2} \left(I \pm \frac{1}{\langle \xi \rangle_M} (\xi_j \gamma^0 \gamma^j + M \gamma^0) \right)$$

and the associated Fourier multiplier $\widehat{(\Pi_{\pm} f)}(\xi) = \Pi_{\pm}(\xi) \widehat{f}(\xi)$. A computation shows that $\Pi_+ \Pi_- = \Pi_- \Pi_+ = 0$ and $\Pi_{\pm}^2 = \Pi_{\pm}$. Moreover, given any spinor ψ we have

$$\psi = \Pi_+ \psi + \Pi_- \psi, \quad (-i \gamma^\mu \partial_\mu + M) \Pi_{\pm} \psi = \gamma^0 (-i \partial_t \pm \langle -i \nabla \rangle_M) \psi.$$

As in [Bejenaru and Herr 2017], we can now reduce the original system (1-3) to a first-order system as follows. Suppose we have a solution (ψ_{\pm}, ϕ_+) to

$$\begin{aligned} (-i \partial_t \pm \langle \nabla \rangle_M) \psi_{\pm} &= \Pi_{\pm} (\mathfrak{R}(\phi_+) \gamma^0 \psi) \\ (-i \partial_t + \langle \nabla \rangle_m) \phi_+ &= \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-1} (\psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \psi) \\ \psi_{\pm}(0) &= f_{\pm}, \\ \phi_+(0) &= g_+, \end{aligned} \tag{7-3}$$

where $\psi = \Pi_+ \psi_+ + \Pi_- \psi_-$ and the data (f_{\pm}, g_+) satisfies $\Pi_{\pm} f_{\pm} = f_{\pm}$. If we let $\phi = \mathfrak{R}(\phi_+)$, then since $\psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \psi$ is real-valued, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} 2(\phi + i \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-1} \partial_t \phi) &= \phi_+ + i \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-1} \partial_t \phi_+ + \overline{(\phi_+ - i \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-1} \partial_t \phi_+)} \\ &= 2\phi_+ - \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-2} (\psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \psi) + \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-2} \overline{(\psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \psi)} = 2\phi_+. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, if we take $g_+ = \phi(0) + i \langle \nabla \rangle_m^{-1} \partial_t \phi(0)$, a simple computation shows that (ψ, ϕ) is a solution to the original DKG system (1-3). Note that, after rescaling, it suffices to consider the case $m = 1$. Therefore, to prove Theorem 1.2, it is enough to construct global solutions to the reduced system (7-3) with $m = 1$.

7B. Analysis on the sphere. We require some basic facts on analysis on the sphere \mathbb{S}^2 , which can be found in, for instance, [Stein and Weiss 1971; Strichartz 1972; Sterbenz 2005]. Let Y_ℓ denote the set of homogeneous harmonic polynomials of degree ℓ , and let $y_{\ell,n}$, $n = 0, \dots, 2\ell$, be an orthonormal basis for Y_ℓ with respect to the inner product

$$\langle y_{\ell,n}, y_{\ell',n'} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)} = \int_{\mathbb{S}^2} [y_{\ell,n}(\omega)]^\dagger y_{\ell',n'}(\omega) d\mathbb{S}(\omega).$$

Given $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$, we have the orthogonal (in $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$) decomposition

$$f(x) = \sum_{\ell} \sum_{n=0}^{2\ell} \langle f(|x|\omega), y_{\ell,n}(\omega) \rangle_{L^2_\omega(\mathbb{S}^2)} y_{\ell,n} \left(\frac{x}{|x|} \right).$$

For $N > 1$, we define the spherical Littlewood–Paley projections

$$\begin{aligned} (H_N f)(x) &= \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} \sum_{n=0}^{2\ell} \rho \left(\frac{\ell}{N} \right) \langle f(|x|\cdot), y_{\ell,n} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)} y_{\ell,n} \left(\frac{x}{|x|} \right), \\ (H_1 f)(x) &= \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} \sum_{n=0}^{2\ell} \rho_{\leq 1}(\ell) \langle f(|x|\cdot), y_{\ell,n} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)} y_{\ell,n} \left(\frac{x}{|x|} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Fractional powers of the angular derivatives $\langle \Omega \rangle$ are then defined as

$$\langle \Omega \rangle^\sigma f = \sum_{N \in \mathbb{Z}^{\mathbb{N}}} N^\sigma H_N f. \tag{7-4}$$

If we let $\Omega_{ij} = x_i \partial_j - x_j \partial_i$ denote the standard infinitesimal generators of the rotations on \mathbb{R}^3 , then a computation gives

$$\|\Omega_{ij} H_N f\|_{L^2_x(\mathbb{R}^3)} \approx N \|H_N f\|_{L^2_x(\mathbb{R}^3)}.$$

In addition, if $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^2}$ denotes the Laplacian on the sphere of radius $|x|$, then $\Delta_{\mathbb{S}^2} = \sum_{j < k} \Omega_{ij}^2$. These facts are not explicitly required in the following, and we shall only make use of the spectral definition (7-4). More important for our purposes, are the basic properties of the multipliers H_N .

Lemma 7.1. *Let $N \geq 1$. Then H_N is uniformly (in N) bounded on $L^p(\mathbb{R}^3)$, and H_N commutes with all radial Fourier multipliers. Moreover, if $N' \geq 1$, then either $N \sim N'$ or*

$$H_N \Pi_{\pm} H_{N'} = 0.$$

Proof. The first claim follows from [Strichartz 1972]. To prove the second claim, let T be a radial Fourier multiplier with $\widehat{Tf}(\xi) = \sigma(|\xi|) \widehat{f}(\xi)$. It is enough to show that, if $f(x) = a(|x|) y_\ell(x/|x|)$ for some $y_\ell \in Y_\ell$, then $Tf = b(|x|) y_{\ell'}(x/|x|)$ for some $b(|x|)$ depending on a and σ . But this follows directly from [Stein and Weiss 1971, page 158]. To prove the final claim, suppose that $N \gg N'$ or $N \ll N'$. Our goal is to show that $H_N \Pi_{\pm} H_{N'} = 0$. Since H_N commutes with radial Fourier multipliers, it is enough to show that $H_N(\partial_j f) = 0$ in the case $f(x) = a(|x|) y_{\ell'}(x/|x|)$ with $y_{\ell'} \in Y_{\ell'}$ and $\frac{1}{2}N' \leq \ell' \leq 2N'$. Since $\partial_j = (x_j/|x|)\partial_r + \sum_k (x_k/|x|^2)\Omega_{jk}$, where $\partial_r = (x/|x|) \cdot \nabla$, and $\partial_r(y_{\ell'}(x/|x|)) = 0$, we can reduce further to just showing that $H_N(x_k \Omega_{jk} y_{\ell'}) = 0$, which corresponds to checking that

$$\langle y_\ell, x_k \Omega_{kj} y_{\ell'} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)} = 0 \tag{7-5}$$

for every $\frac{1}{2}N \leq \ell \leq 2N$. Since $x_k \Omega_{kj} y_{\ell'}$ is a polynomial of order $\ell' + 1$, by the orthogonality of the polynomials y_ℓ , (7-5) clearly holds if $\ell > \ell' + 1$. On the other hand, after an application of integration by parts, we obtain

$$\langle y_\ell, x_k \Omega_{kj} y_{\ell'} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)} = \langle \Omega_{kj}(x_k y_\ell), y_{\ell'} \rangle_{L^2(\mathbb{S}^2)}$$

since $\Omega_{kj}(x_k y_\ell)$ is a polynomial of order $\ell + 1$; we see that again (7-5) holds if $\ell' > \ell + 1$. □

An application of Lemma 7.1 shows that H_N commutes with the P_λ and C_d multipliers since we may write $C_d^{\pm, m} = e^{\mp it \langle \nabla \rangle_m} \rho(-i \partial_t / d) e^{\pm it \langle \nabla \rangle_m}$. On the other hand, it is important to note that H_N does not commute with the cube and cap localisation operators R_κ and P_q .

7C. Norms and the energy inequality. Fix $0 < \sigma \ll 1$,

$$\frac{1}{2} < \frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sigma}{1000},$$

and $b = 3/a - 1$, and define

$$\|u\|_{Y_{\lambda, N}^{\pm, m}} = \lambda^{\frac{1}{a} - b} \sup_{d \in \mathbb{Z}^2} d^b \|C_d^{\pm, m} P_\lambda H_N u\|_{L_t^a L_x^2}$$

and

$$\|u\|_{F_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,m}} = \|P_\lambda H_N u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} + \|u\|_{Y_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,m}}.$$

We also let

$$\|u\|_{F_{\pm,m}^{s,\sigma}} = \left(\sum_{\lambda \geq 1} \sum_{N \geq 1} \lambda^{2s} N^{2\sigma} \|u\|_{F_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,m}}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

and define the Banach space

$$F_{\pm,m}^{s,\sigma} = \{u \in C(\mathbb{R}, \langle \Omega \rangle^{-\sigma} H^s) : \|u\|_{F_{\pm,m}^{s,\sigma}} < \infty\}.$$

For the remainder of this section, let $\sigma_M = \sigma$ if $M \geq \frac{1}{2}$ and $\sigma_M = \frac{7}{30} + \sigma$ if $0 < M < \frac{1}{2}$. Thus σ_M corresponds to amount of angular regularity in the statement of [Theorem 1.2](#). We will construct a solution $(\psi_\pm, \phi_+) \in F_{\pm,M}^{0,\sigma_M} \times F_{\pm,1}^{\frac{1}{2},\sigma_M}$ to the reduced system (7-3). Thus we work in a frequency-localised V^2 space, with the additional component $Y_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,m}$ needed to control the solution in the high modulation region; for the latter see [\[Bejenaru and Herr 2015, Section 4\]](#).

There are three basic properties of $V_{\pm,m}^2$ which we exploit in the following. The first is a simple bound in the high-modulation region; see [\[Hadac et al. 2009, Corollary 2.18\]](#) for a proof.

Lemma 7.2. *Let $m \geq 0$ and $2 \leq q \leq \infty$. For any $d \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}$ we have*

$$\|C_d^{\pm,m} u\|_{L_t^q L_x^2} \lesssim d^{-\frac{1}{q}} \|u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2}.$$

The second key property is a standard energy inequality, which reduces the problem of estimating a Duhamel integral in $F_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,M}$ to controlling a trilinear integral.

Lemma 7.3. *Let $F \in L_t^\infty L_x^2$, and suppose that*

$$\sup_{\|P_\lambda H_N v\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} \lesssim 1} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}} \langle P_\lambda H_N v(t), F(t) \rangle_{L_x^2} dt \right| < \infty.$$

If $u \in C(\mathbb{R}, L_x^2)$ satisfies $-i \partial_t u \pm \langle \nabla \rangle_m u = F$, then $P_\lambda H_N u \in V_{\pm,m}^2$ and we have the bound

$$\|P_\lambda H_N u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} \lesssim \|P_\lambda H_N u(0)\|_{L^2} + \sup_{\|P_\lambda H_N v\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} \lesssim 1} \int_{\mathbb{R}} \langle P_\lambda H_N v(t), F(t) \rangle_{L_x^2} dt. \tag{7-6}$$

Proof. See [\[Koch and Steinerberger 2015\]](#) or [\[Hadac et al. 2009, Proposition 2.10\]](#) for details on the duality. It is also possible to prove this directly as follows. Clearly it is enough to consider the case $u(0) = 0$, thus $u(t) = \int_0^t e^{\mp i(t-s)\langle \nabla \rangle_m} F(s) ds$. Let $K > 0$ and $(t_k) \in \mathcal{Z}$. A computation gives the identity

$$\left(\sum_{|k| < K} \|e^{\pm i t_k \langle \nabla \rangle_m} P_\lambda H_N u(t_k) - e^{\pm i t_{k-1} \langle \nabla \rangle_m} P_\lambda H_N u(t_{k-1})\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \int_{\mathbb{R}} \langle P_\lambda H_N v(s), F(s) \rangle_{L_x^2} ds$$

with

$$v(s) = A^{-1} \sum_{|k| < K} \mathbb{1}_{[t_{k-1}, t_k)}(s) (e^{\mp i(s-t_k)\langle \nabla \rangle_m} u(t_k) - e^{\mp i(s-t_{k-1})\langle \nabla \rangle_m} u(t_{k-1}))$$

and

$$A = \left(\sum_{|k| < K} \|e^{\pm i t_k \langle \nabla \rangle_m} P_\lambda H_N u(t_k) - e^{\pm i t_{k-1} \langle \nabla \rangle_m} P_\lambda H_N u(t_{k-1})\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

It is easy to check that

$$\|P_\lambda H_N v\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2} \lesssim 1.$$

Thus, by taking the sup over the above inequality, and then letting $K \rightarrow \infty$ we deduce the bound (7-6). Since u is also continuous, we obtain $u \in V_{\pm, m}^2$ as required. \square

Note that the norm on v can in fact be taken to be the stronger $U_{\pm, m}^2$ norm, but we do not require this improvement here.

The final result we require on the $V_{\pm, m}^2$ spaces, concerns the question of scattering.

Lemma 7.4. *Let $u \in V_{\pm, m}^2$. Then there exists $f \in L_x^2$ such that $\|u(t) - e^{\mp i t \langle \nabla \rangle} f\|_{L_x^2} \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$.*

Clearly, this result can be extended to elements of the space $F_{\pm, m}^{s, \sigma_M}$. In other words, if we construct a solution in $F_{\pm, m}^{s, \sigma_M}$, then we immediately deduce the solution must scatter to a linear solution as $t \rightarrow \pm\infty$.

7D. Proof of Theorem 1.2. We now come to the proof of Theorem 1.2. In light of Lemma 7.4, it is enough to construct a solution $(\psi_\pm, \phi_\pm) \in F_{\pm, M}^{0, \sigma_M} \times F_{\pm, 1}^{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma_M}$ to the reduced system (7-3). Note that we may always assume that $\psi_\pm = \Pi_\pm \psi_\pm$, provided that this is satisfied at $t = 0$. Define the Duhamel integral

$$\mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F] = \int_0^t e^{\mp i(t-s) \langle \nabla \rangle_m} F(s) ds.$$

Note that $\mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F]$ solves the equation

$$(-i \partial_t \pm \langle \nabla \rangle_m) \mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F] = F$$

with vanishing data at $t = 0$. Moreover, we can check that for every $1 < p < \infty$ we have

$$\|C_d^{\pm, m} \mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F]\|_{L_t^p L_x^2} \lesssim d^{-1} \|C_d^{\pm, m} F\|_{L_t^p L_x^2}. \tag{7-7}$$

If we had the bounds

$$\begin{aligned} \|\Pi_{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1}[\phi \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi]\|_{F_{\pm 1, M}^{0, \sigma_M}} &\lesssim \|\phi\|_{F_{+1}^{1/2, \sigma_M}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{M, \pm 2}^{0, \sigma_M}}, \\ \|\langle \nabla \rangle^{-1} \mathcal{I}_1^+[(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi)^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi]\|_{F_{+1}^{1/2, \sigma_M}} &\lesssim \|\psi\|_{F_{M, \pm 1}^{0, \sigma_M}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{M, \pm 2}^{0, \sigma_M}}, \end{aligned} \tag{7-8}$$

then a standard fixed-point argument in $F_{\pm, M}^{0, \sigma_M} \times F_{\pm, 1}^{\frac{1}{2}, \sigma_M}$ would give the required solution to (7-3), provided of course that the data (f_\pm, g_\pm) satisfied

$$\|\langle \Omega \rangle^{\sigma_M} f_\pm\|_{L^2} + \|\langle \Omega \rangle^{\sigma_M} g_\pm\|_{H^{1/2}} \ll 1.$$

Let

$$\phi_{\mu, N} = P_\mu H_N \phi, \quad \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1} = P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1}, \quad \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} = P_{\lambda_2} H_{N_2} \varphi.$$

We have the following frequency-localised estimates.

Theorem 7.5. Fix $M > 0$. Then there exists $\epsilon > 0$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \Pi_{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \right\|_{F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\sigma_M} \left(\frac{\min\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\}}{\max\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\}} \right)^{\epsilon} \|\phi\|_{F_{\mu, N}^{+, 1}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}} \end{aligned} \quad (7-9)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \right\|_{F_{\mu, N}^{+, 1}} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^{\sigma_M} \left(\frac{\min\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\}}{\max\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\}} \right)^{\epsilon} \|\psi\|_{F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned} \quad (7-10)$$

Remark 7.6. The proof of [Theorem 7.5](#) in the resonant regime $0 < M < \frac{1}{2}$ relies on the small-scale V^2 estimates in [Corollary 6.4](#). However, it is possible to prove a weaker version of [Theorem 7.5](#), with σ_M replaced with some larger σ , provided only that a *robust* version of the *homogeneous* bilinear restriction estimate [\(6-3\)](#) holds. More precisely, by following the proof of [Corollary 6.4](#), and then interpolating with the Klein–Gordon Strichartz estimates as in [Remarks 6.2](#) and [6.3](#), it is possible to show that [\(6-3\)](#) implies the V^2 bound

$$\|uv\|_{L_t^a L_x^b(\mathbb{R}^{1+3})} \lesssim \lambda^{1+\frac{1}{a}-\frac{1}{b}} \|u\|_{V_{\pm 1, m_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\pm 2, m_2}^2}$$

in the range

$$\frac{1}{a} + \frac{2}{b} < 2, \quad \frac{1}{a} + \frac{6}{5b} < \frac{7}{5},$$

where u and v have Fourier support in 1-separated angular wedges of size $1 \times 1 \times \lambda$ at distance λ from the origin. The case $a = 2-$ and $b = \frac{4}{3}+$ can be used together with the $L_t^{2+} L_x^{4-}$ angular Strichartz bound from [\[Cho and Lee 2013, Theorem 1.1\]](#) instead of the argument used in the high-high case in the proof of [Theorem 8.8](#) below. However, the estimate obtained is weaker than the one in [Theorem 7.5](#). Moreover, it still requires a robust version of the homogeneous bilinear estimate [\(6-3\)](#) for which we can track the dependence of the constant on the phases Φ_j due to the lack of homogeneity of the Klein–Gordon phase. Irrespective of fact the [Theorem 1.1](#) applies to V^2 -functions, a key advantage of our formulation of [Theorem 1.1](#), in comparison to [\[Bejenaru 2017; Lee and Vargas 2010\]](#), is that it allows us to read off the above-mentioned dependence.

The standard Littlewood–Paley trichotomy implies that the left-hand sides of [\(7-9\)](#) and [\(7-10\)](#) are zero unless

$$\max\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\} \approx \text{med}\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\} \gtrsim \min\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\} \quad (7-11)$$

and

$$\max\{N, N_1, N_2\} \approx \text{med}\{N, N_1, N_2\} \gtrsim \min\{N, N_1, N_2\}$$

It is now easy to check that the bilinear estimates [\(7-8\)](#), follow from [Theorem 7.5](#). Consequently, we have reduced the proof of [Theorem 1.2](#) to proving the frequency-localised bilinear estimates in [Theorem 7.5](#). As the proof of [Theorem 7.5](#) requires a number of preliminary results, we postpone the proof until [Section 8D](#).

8. Linear and multilinear estimates

In this section our goal is give the proof of [Theorem 7.5](#). To this end, we first provide some linear estimates and adapt them to our functional setup, prove an auxiliary trilinear estimate in V^2 , and eventually give the proof of the crucial [Theorem 7.5](#) in [Section 8D](#).

8A. Auxiliary estimates. As is well known, see for example [[D’Ancona et al. 2007](#)], the system (7-3) exhibits null structure. To exploit the null structure of the product $\psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \psi$, we start by noting that for any $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^3$, we have the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & [\Pi_{\pm_1} f]^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2} g \\ &= [(\Pi_{\pm_1} - \Pi_{\pm_1}(x)) f]^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2} g + [\Pi_{\pm_1}(x) f]^\dagger \gamma^0 (\Pi_{\pm_2} - \Pi_{\pm_2}(y)) g + f^\dagger \Pi_{\pm_1}(x) \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2}(y) g. \end{aligned}$$

This is then exploited by using the null-form-type bound

$$|\Pi_{\pm_1}(x) \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2}(y)| \lesssim \theta(\pm_1 x, \pm_2 y) + \frac{|\pm_1 |x| \pm_2 |y||}{\langle x \rangle \langle y \rangle}, \tag{8-1}$$

which follows from (2-6) by observing that

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi_{\pm_1}(x) \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2}(y) &= \Pi_{\pm_1}(x) (\Pi_{\pm_1}(x) \gamma^0 - \gamma^0 \Pi_{\mp_2}(y)) \Pi_{\pm_2}(y) \\ &= \Pi_{\pm_1}(x) \left(\left(\frac{\pm_2 \eta_j}{\langle \eta \rangle_M} - \frac{\pm_1 \xi_j}{\langle \xi \rangle_M} \right) \gamma^j + \left(\frac{\pm_1 M}{\langle \xi \rangle_M} + \frac{\pm_2 M}{\langle \eta \rangle_M} \right) I \right) \Pi_{\pm_2}(y), \end{aligned}$$

together with the following lemma; see [[Bejenaru 2017](#), Lemma 3.3] for a similar statement to part (i).

Lemma 8.1. *Let $1 < r < \infty$:*

(i) *If $\lambda \geq 1$, $\alpha \gtrsim \lambda^{-1}$, $\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha$, then*

$$\|(\Pi_{\pm_1} - \Pi_{\pm_1}(\lambda \omega(\kappa))) R_\kappa P_\lambda f\|_{L_x^r} \lesssim \alpha \|R_\kappa P_\lambda u\|_{L_x^r}.$$

(ii) *If $\lambda \geq 1$, $0 < \alpha \lesssim \lambda^{-1}$, $\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha$, $q \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda^2 \alpha}$ with centre ξ_0 , then*

$$\|(\Pi_{\pm_1} - \Pi_{\pm_1}(\xi_0)) R_\kappa P_q P_\lambda f\|_{L_x^r} \lesssim \alpha \|R_\kappa P_q P_\lambda u\|_{L_x^r}.$$

Proof. Concerning part (i), see [[Bejenaru 2017](#), Proof of Lemma 3.3]. Concerning part (ii), we may assume $|\xi_0| \approx \lambda$ and, due to boundedness, we may replace the symbol of $R_\kappa P_q P_\lambda$ by a smooth cutoff χ_E to the parallelepiped E with centre ξ_0 of side lengths $\alpha \mu^2 \times \alpha \mu \times \alpha \mu$ with long side pointing in the direction ξ_0 . After rotating ξ_0 to $\xi_0 = |\xi_0|(1, 0, 0)$, the operator has the symbol

$$m(\xi) = \left(\pm B^j \left(\frac{\xi_j}{\langle \xi \rangle_M} - \frac{\xi_{0,j}}{\langle \xi_0 \rangle_M} \right) \pm \frac{1}{2} \gamma^0 \left(\frac{1}{\langle \xi \rangle_M} - \frac{1}{\langle \xi_0 \rangle_M} \right) \right) \chi_E(\xi)$$

for certain $B^1, B^2, B^3 \in \mathbb{C}^{4 \times 4}$. It suffices to prove the kernel bound

$$|(\mathcal{F}_x^{-1} m)(x)| \lesssim \alpha^4 \lambda^4 (1 + \alpha \lambda^2 |x_1| + \alpha \lambda |x'|)^{-4}, \quad x = (x_1, x'), \tag{8-2}$$

as it implies $\|\mathcal{F}_x^{-1}m\|_{L^1(\mathbb{R}^3)} \lesssim \alpha$. In the support of χ_E we obtain, from (2-6) and a simple computation,

$$|m(\xi)| \lesssim \lambda^{-3}|\xi| - |\xi_0| + \theta(\xi, \xi_0) + \lambda^{-2}||\xi| - |\xi_0|| \lesssim \alpha.$$

From the localisation of χ_E , where $|\partial_{\xi_1}^\ell (\xi_j / \langle \xi \rangle_M)| \lesssim \lambda^{-\ell-1}$, and the Leibniz rule, we conclude for $\ell > 0$

$$|\partial_{\xi_1}^\ell m(\xi)| \lesssim \alpha(\alpha\lambda^2)^{-\ell} + \sum_{0 < \ell_1 \leq \ell} \lambda^{-\ell_1-1}(\alpha\lambda^2)^{\ell_1-\ell} \lesssim \alpha(\alpha\lambda^2)^{-\ell}.$$

Integration by parts now implies (8-2) if $\alpha\lambda^2|x_1| \geq \alpha\lambda|x'|$. For $k = 2, 3$, we have $|\partial_{\xi_k}^\ell (\xi_j / \langle \xi \rangle_M)| \lesssim \lambda^{-\ell}$ within the support of χ_E ; hence we conclude for $\ell > 0$

$$|\partial_{\xi_k}^\ell m(\xi)| \lesssim \alpha(\alpha\lambda)^{-\ell} + \sum_{0 < \ell_1 \leq \ell} \lambda^{-\ell_1}(\alpha\lambda)^{\ell_1-\ell} \lesssim \alpha(\alpha\lambda)^{-\ell}.$$

Integration by parts now implies (8-2) in the region where $\alpha\lambda^2|x_1| \leq \alpha\lambda|x_k|$. □

The proof of Theorem 7.5 requires a number of standard linear estimates for homogeneous solutions to the Klein–Gordon equation. We start by recalling the Strichartz estimates for the wave and Klein–Gordon equations.

Lemma 8.2 (wave Strichartz). *Let $m \geq 0$ and $2 < q \leq \infty$. If $0 < \mu \leq \lambda$, $N \geq 1$, and $1/r = 1/2 - 1/q$ then for every $q \in Q_\mu$ we have*

$$\|e^{\mp it\langle \nabla \rangle^m} P_q P_\lambda f\|_{L_t^q L_x^r} \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{r}} \lambda^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{r}} \|P_q P_\lambda f\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Moreover, by spending additional angular regularity we have

$$\|e^{\mp it\langle \nabla \rangle^m} P_\lambda H_N f\|_{L_t^q L_x^4} \lesssim \lambda^{\frac{3}{4}-\frac{1}{q}} N \|P_\lambda H_N f\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Proof. The proof of the first estimate can be found in [Bejenaru and Herr 2017, Lemma 3.1]. The second follows by simple modification of the argument in the appendix to [Sterbenz 2005]. More precisely, after interpolating with the $L_t^\infty L_x^2$ estimate, we need to show that

$$\|e^{\mp it\langle \nabla \rangle^m} H_N P_\lambda f\|_{L_t^2 L_x^r} \lesssim N \lambda^{3(\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{r})-\frac{1}{2}} \|H_N \lambda f\|_{L_x^2}.$$

After rescaling, and following the argument on [Sterbenz 2005, pp. 226–227], it is enough to prove that for every $\epsilon > 0$ we have the space-time Morawetz-type bound

$$\|(1 + |x|)^{-\frac{1}{2}-\epsilon} \nabla u\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \lesssim \|(\partial_t u(0), \nabla u(0))\|_{L_x^2} \tag{8-3}$$

for functions u with $\square u + mu = 0$, and the constant in (8-3) is independent of m . However the proof of (8-3) follows the same argument as the wave case in [Sterbenz 2005]; the only change is to replace the wave-energy-momentum tensor with the Klein–Gordon version

$$Q_{\alpha\beta} = \frac{1}{2}(\partial_\alpha \phi \overline{\partial_\beta \phi} + \partial_\beta \phi \overline{\partial_\alpha \phi} - g_{\alpha\beta}(\partial^\gamma \phi \overline{\partial_\gamma \phi} + m^2|\phi|^2)).$$

We omit the details. □

The amount of angular regularity required for the $L_t^{2+} L_x^4$ Strichartz estimate to hold, is much less than that stated in Lemma 8.2. In fact, in [Sterbenz 2005], it is shown that the same estimate holds with $N^{\frac{1}{2}+}$. However, as the sharp number of angular derivatives is not required in the arguments we use in the present paper, we have elected to simply state the result with a whole angular derivative. On the other hand, the number of angular derivatives required in the following Klein–Gordon regime, plays a crucial role.

Lemma 8.3 (Klein–Gordon Strichartz). *Let $m > 0$ and $\frac{3}{10} < 1/r < \frac{5}{14}$. Then for every $\epsilon > 0$ we have*

$$\|e^{\mp it \langle \nabla \rangle^m} P_\lambda H_N f\|_{L_{t,x}^r} \lesssim \lambda^{2-\frac{5}{r}} N^{7(\frac{1}{r}-\frac{3}{10})+\epsilon} \|P_\lambda H_N f\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Proof. This is a special case of [Cho and Lee 2013, Theorem 1.1]. □

Remark 8.4. Without angular regularity, the optimal $L_{t,x}^r$ Strichartz estimate for the Klein–Gordon equation is $r = \frac{10}{3}$; see for instance [Machihara et al. 2003]. However, in the resonant region, we are forced to take r slightly below 3; thus the additional angular regularity is essential to obtain the additional integrability in time. In other words, the angular regularity is used not just to obtain the scale-invariant endpoint, but also plays a crucial role in controlling the resonant interaction. Note that the number of angular derivatives required in Lemma 8.3 is not expected to be optimal, and any improvement in this direction has an impact on Theorem 1.2.

We have seen that the addition of angular regularity improves the range of available Strichartz estimates. An alternative way to exploit additional angular regularity is given by the following angular-concentration-type bound.

Lemma 8.5 [Sterbenz 2005, Lemma 5.2]. *Let $2 \leq p < \infty$, and $0 \leq s < 2/p$. If $\lambda, N \geq 1$, $\alpha \gtrsim \lambda^{-1}$, and $\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha$ we have*

$$\|R_\kappa P_\lambda H_N f\|_{L_x^p(\mathbb{R}^3)} \lesssim \alpha^s N^s \|P_\lambda H_N f\|_{L_x^p(\mathbb{R}^3)}.$$

Finally, we need to estimate various square sums of norms. As we work in V^2 , this causes a slight loss in certain estimates. However, as we have some angular derivatives to work with, this loss can always be absorbed elsewhere.

Lemma 8.6. *Let $(P_j)_{j \in \mathcal{J}}$ and $(\mathcal{M}_j)_{j \in \mathcal{J}}$ be a collection of spatial Fourier multipliers. Suppose that the symbols of P_j have finite overlap, and*

$$\|\mathcal{M}_j P_j f\|_{L_x^2} \lesssim \delta \|P_j f\|_{L_x^2}$$

for some $\delta > 0$.

(i) *Let $q > 2$, $r \geq 2$. Suppose that there exists $A > 0$ such that for every j we have the bound*

$$\|e^{\mp it \langle \nabla \rangle^m} P_j f\|_{L_t^q L_x^r} \leq A \|P_j f\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Then for every $\epsilon > 0$ we have

$$\left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|\mathcal{M}_j P_j v\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \delta (\#\mathcal{J})^\epsilon A \|v\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2}.$$

(ii) Fix $p_0 > 1$. Suppose that there exists $A > 0$ such that $\|P_j f\|_{L_x^\infty} \lesssim A \|f\|_{L_x^2}$. Moreover, suppose that for every $p > p_0$ there exists $B_p > 0$, and for any $j \in \mathcal{J}$ there exists $\mathcal{K}_j \subset \mathcal{J}$ with $\#\mathcal{K}_j \lesssim 1$ such that for every $k \in \mathcal{K}_j$

$$\|P_j u P_k v\|_{L_{t,x}^p} \lesssim B_p \|P_j u\|_{U_{\pm 1, m_1}^2} \|P_k v\|_{U_{\pm 2, m_2}^2}.$$

Then for every $q > p_0$ and $p_0/q < \theta < 1$ we have

$$\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}, k \in \mathcal{K}_j} \|P_j u P_k v\|_{L_{t,x}^q} \lesssim \delta (\#\mathcal{J})^{1-\theta} A^{1-\theta} B_{\theta q}^\theta \|u\|_{V_{\pm 1, m_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\pm 2, m_2}^2}.$$

Proof. We start with the proof of (i). Let $2 \leq p \leq q$ and suppose that $\phi = \sum_{I \in \mathcal{I}} \mathbb{1}_I(t) e^{\mp i t \langle \nabla \rangle_m} f_I$ is a U^p atom; thus $\sum_I \|f_I\|_{L_x^2}^p \leq 1$. The assumed linear estimate, together with the finite overlap of the Fourier multipliers P_j implies

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|\mathcal{M}_j P_j \phi\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} &\leq \left(\sum_{I \in \mathcal{I}} \sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|e^{\mp i t \langle \nabla \rangle_m} \mathcal{M}_j P_j f_I\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \\ &\leq A \left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \sum_{I \in \mathcal{I}} \|\mathcal{M}_j P_j f_I\|_{L_x^2}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \leq \delta A \left(\sum_{I \in \mathcal{I}} \left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|P_j f_I\|_{L_x^2}^2 \right)^{\frac{p}{2}} \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \lesssim \delta A. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently the atomic definition of $U_{\pm, m}^p$ then implies that for any $2 \leq p \leq q$

$$\left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|\mathcal{M}_j P_j u\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \lesssim A \delta \|u\|_{U_{\pm, m}^p}. \tag{8-4}$$

Let $v \in V_{\pm, m}^2$. There exists a decomposition $v = \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} v_\ell$ such that for every $p \geq 2$ we have

$$\|v_\ell\|_{U_{\pm, m}^p} \lesssim 2^{\ell(\frac{2}{p}-1)} \|v\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2};$$

see, e.g., [Koch and Tataru 2005, Lemma 6.4] or [Hadac et al. 2009, Propositions 2.5 and 2.20]. An application of Hölder’s inequality, together with (8-4) gives for any $2 < p \leq q$

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|\mathcal{M}_j P_j v\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} &\lesssim (\#\mathcal{J})^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{p}} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} \left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}} \|\mathcal{M}_j P_j v_\ell\|_{L_t^q L_x^r}^p \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \\ &\lesssim \delta A (\#\mathcal{J})^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{p}} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} \|v_\ell\|_{U_{\pm, m}^p} \\ &\lesssim \delta A (\#\mathcal{J})^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{p}} \|v\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} 2^{\ell(\frac{2}{p}-1)} \\ &\lesssim \delta A (\#\mathcal{J})^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{p}} \|v\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus (i) follows by taking p sufficiently close to 2.

We now turn to the proof of (ii). As in the proof of (i), we have the decompositions $u = \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} u_\ell$ and $v = \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}} v_\ell$ with $\|u_\ell\|_{U_{\pm 1, m_1}^r} \lesssim 2^{\ell(\frac{2}{r}-1)}$ and $\|v_\ell\|_{U_{\pm 2, m_2}^r} \lesssim 2^{\ell(\frac{2}{r}-1)}$ for every $r \geq 2$. Let $q > p_0$ and $p_0/q < \theta < 1$. Then the convexity of the L^q norms together with Hölder’s inequality, our assumed bilinear estimate, and the U^2 summation argument used in (i) implies

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}, k \in \mathcal{K}_j} \|P_j u \mathcal{M}_k P_k v\|_{L_{t,x}^q} \\ & \lesssim (\#\mathcal{J})^{1-\theta} \sum_{\ell, \ell' \in \mathbb{N}} \left(\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}, k \in \mathcal{K}_j} \|P_j u_\ell \mathcal{M}_k P_k v_{\ell'}\|_{L_{t,x}^{\theta q}} \right)^\theta \left(\sup_{j, k \in \mathcal{J}} \|P_j u_\ell \mathcal{M}_k P_k v_{\ell'}\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty} \right)^{1-\theta} \\ & \lesssim \delta (\#\mathcal{J})^{1-\theta} A^{1-\theta} B_{\theta q}^\theta \sum_{\ell, \ell' \in \mathbb{N}} (\|u_\ell\|_{U_{\pm 1, m_1}^2} \|v_{\ell'}\|_{U_{\pm 2, m_2}^2})^\theta (\|u_\ell\|_{U_{\pm 1, m_1}^\infty} \|v_{\ell'}\|_{U_{\pm 2, m_2}^\infty})^{1-\theta} \\ & \lesssim \delta (\#\mathcal{J})^{1-\theta} A^{1-\theta} B_{\theta q}^\theta \|u\|_{V_{\pm 1, m_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\pm 2, m_2}^2} \sum_{\ell, \ell' \in \mathbb{N}} 2^{-\ell(1-\theta)} 2^{-\ell'(1-\theta)} \\ & \lesssim \delta (\#\mathcal{J})^{1-\theta} A^{1-\theta} B_{\theta q}^\theta \|u\|_{V_{\pm 1, m_1}^2} \|v\|_{V_{\pm 2, m_2}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore (ii) follows. □

Clearly the previous lemma allows us to extend [Corollary 6.4](#), and the linear estimates discussed above, to frequency-localised functions in $V_{\pm, m}^2$. For instance, for any $1 \leq \mu \lesssim \lambda$, $\alpha \gtrsim \lambda^{-1}$, and $\epsilon > 0$, $q > 2$, we have by [Lemma 8.2](#)

$$\left(\sum_{q \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu} \sum_{\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha} \|R_\kappa P_q u_{\lambda, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^4}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \alpha^{-\epsilon} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda} \right)^{\frac{1}{4}-\epsilon} \lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} \|u_{\lambda, N}\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2}, \tag{8-5}$$

$$\left(\sum_{\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha} \|R_\kappa u_{\lambda, N}\|_{L_t^q L_x^4}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \alpha^{-\epsilon} \lambda^{\frac{3}{4}-\frac{1}{q}} N \|u_{\lambda, N}\|_{V_{\pm, m}^2}, \tag{8-6}$$

where we use the shorthand $u_{\lambda, N} = P_\lambda P_N u$. Similarly, an application of [Corollary 6.4](#), [Lemma 8.1](#), and (ii) in [Lemma 8.6](#) gives for every $q > \frac{3}{2}$ and $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\sum_{\kappa, \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_{\mu^{-1}}} \sum_{\substack{q, q'' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q-q''| \approx \mu \text{ or } |\kappa-\kappa''| \approx \mu^{-1}}} \|R_{\kappa''} P_{q''} \phi_{\mu, N} [(\Pi_+ - \Pi_+(\mu \omega(\kappa))) R_\kappa P_q \psi_{\mu, N_1}]^\dagger\|_{L_{t,x}^q(\mathbb{R}^{1+3})}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ & \lesssim \mu^\epsilon \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\mu, N_1}\|_{V_{+, M}^2}, \end{aligned} \tag{8-7}$$

where $\omega(\kappa)$ denotes the centre of the cap $\kappa \in \mathcal{C}_{\mu^{-1}}$. This bilinear bound plays a key role in controlling the solution to the DKG system in the resonant region.

8B. General resonance identity. After an application of [Lemma 7.3](#), proving the bilinear estimates in [Theorem 7.5](#) for the V^2 component of the norm, reduces to estimating trilinear expressions of the form

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} \phi \psi^\dagger \gamma^0 \varphi \, dx \, dt. \tag{8-8}$$

Suppose ϕ, ψ , and φ have small modulation; thus $\text{supp } \tilde{\phi} \subset \{|\tau + \langle \xi \rangle| \leq d\}$, $\text{supp } \tilde{\psi} \subset \{|\tau \pm_1 \langle \xi \rangle_M| \leq d\}$, and $\text{supp } \tilde{\varphi} \subset \{|\tau \pm_2 \langle \xi \rangle_M| \leq d\}$ for some $d \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}$. If $\xi \in \text{supp } \hat{\psi}$ and $\eta \in \text{supp } \hat{\phi}$, then it is easy to check that the integral (8-8) vanishes unless

$$|\langle \xi - \eta \rangle \mp_1 \langle \xi \rangle_M \pm_2 \langle \eta \rangle_M| \lesssim d.$$

To exploit this, we define the modulation function

$$\mathfrak{M}_{\pm_1, \pm_2}(\xi, \eta) = |\langle \xi - \eta \rangle \mp_1 \langle \xi \rangle_M \pm_2 \langle \eta \rangle_M|.$$

Clearly we have the symmetry properties $\mathfrak{M}_{+,+}(\xi, \eta) = \mathfrak{M}_{-,-}(\eta, \xi)$ and $\mathfrak{M}_{\pm,\mp}(\xi, \eta) = \mathfrak{M}_{\pm,\mp}(\eta, \xi)$. The proof of our global existence results requires a careful analysis of the zero sets of $\mathfrak{M}_{\pm_1, \pm_2}$; the key tool is the following.

Lemma 8.7. *Let $M > 0$:*

(i) *(Nonresonant interactions). We have*

$$\mathfrak{M}_{-,+}(\xi, \eta) \gtrsim \langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle, \quad \mathfrak{M}_{\pm,\pm}(\xi, \eta) \gtrsim \frac{1}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \left(\frac{(|\xi| - |\eta|)^2}{\langle \xi \rangle \langle \eta \rangle} + |\xi| |\eta| \theta^2(\xi, \eta) + 1 \right),$$

$$\mathfrak{M}_{-,-}(\xi, \eta) \gtrsim \frac{|\xi - \eta| |\xi|}{\langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle} \theta^2(\xi - \eta, -\xi), \quad \mathfrak{M}_{+,+}(\xi, \eta) \gtrsim \frac{|\xi - \eta| |\eta|}{\langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle} \theta^2(\xi - \eta, \eta).$$

(ii) *(Resonant interactions). We have*

$$\mathfrak{M}_{+,-}(\xi, \eta) \approx \frac{1}{\langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle} \left| M^2 \frac{(|\xi| - |\eta|)^2}{\langle \xi \rangle_M \langle \eta \rangle_M + |\xi| |\eta| + M^2} + |\xi| |\eta| + \xi \cdot \eta + \frac{4M^2 - 1}{2} \right|,$$

$$\mathfrak{M}_{+,-}(\xi, \eta) \gtrsim \frac{1}{\langle \eta \rangle} \left| \frac{(|\xi| - M|\xi - \eta|)^2}{\langle \xi \rangle_M \langle \xi - \eta \rangle + |\xi| |\xi - \eta| + M} + |\xi| |\xi - \eta| - \xi \cdot (\xi - \eta) + \frac{2M - 1}{2} \right|.$$

Proof. We begin by noting that, if we let $m_1, m_2, m_3 \geq 0$, then for any $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ we have the identity

$$\begin{aligned} & | \langle x - y \rangle_{m_3}^2 - (\langle x \rangle_{m_1} \pm \langle y \rangle_{m_2})^2 | \\ &= | \mp 2 \langle x \rangle_{m_1} \langle y \rangle_{m_2} - 2x \cdot y + (m_3^2 - m_1^2 - m_2^2) | \\ &= | 2(\langle x \rangle_{m_1} \langle y \rangle_{m_2} - (|x||y| + m_1 m_2)) + 2(|x||y| \pm x \cdot y) \pm ((m_1 \pm m_2)^2 - m_3^2) | \\ &= 2 \left| \frac{(m_1 |y| - m_2 |x|)^2}{\langle x \rangle_{m_1} \langle y \rangle_{m_2} + |x||y| + m_1 m_2} + |x||y| \pm x \cdot y \pm \frac{(m_1 \pm m_2)^2 - m_3^2}{2} \right|. \end{aligned} \tag{8-9}$$

We now turn to (i). The bound for $\mathfrak{M}_{-,+}$ is clear. On the other hand, by taking $x = \xi, y = \eta, m_1 = m_2 = M, m_3 = 1$ in (8-9), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{M}_{\pm,\pm}(\xi, \eta) &\geq | \langle \xi - \eta \rangle - | \langle \xi \rangle_M - \langle \eta \rangle_M | | \approx \frac{1}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} | \langle \xi - \eta \rangle^2 - (\langle \xi \rangle_M - \langle \eta \rangle_M)^2 | \\ &\approx \frac{1}{\langle \xi - \eta \rangle} \left(\frac{(|\xi| - |\eta|)^2}{\langle \xi \rangle \langle \eta \rangle} + |\xi| |\eta| \theta^2(\xi, \eta) + 1 \right). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, taking $x = \xi - \eta$ and $y = \xi$, gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{M}_{-,-}(\xi, \eta) &= \frac{|\langle \eta \rangle_M^2 - (\langle \xi - \eta \rangle + \langle \xi \rangle_M)^2|}{\langle \eta \rangle_M + \langle \xi - \eta \rangle + \langle \xi \rangle_M} \\ &\gtrsim \frac{|\xi - \eta| |\xi|}{\langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle} \theta^2 (\xi - \eta, -\xi). \end{aligned}$$

Using the symmetry $\mathfrak{M}_{-,-}(\xi, \eta) = \mathfrak{M}_{+,+}(\eta, \xi)$ gives the remaining bound in (i). To prove (ii), we note that another application of (8-9) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{M}_{+,-}(\xi, \eta) &\approx \frac{1}{\langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle} |\langle \xi - \eta \rangle^2 - (\langle \xi \rangle_M + \langle \eta \rangle_M)^2| \\ &\approx \frac{1}{\langle \xi \rangle + \langle \eta \rangle} \left| M^2 \frac{(|\xi| - |\eta|)^2}{\langle \xi \rangle_M \langle \eta \rangle_M + |\xi| |\eta| + M^2} + |\xi| |\eta| + \xi \cdot \eta + \frac{4M^2 - 1}{2} \right|, \end{aligned}$$

from which the first inequality in (ii) follows. The second inequality in (ii) follows from a similar application of (8-9). □

8C. The trilinear estimates. Suppose we would like to bound an expression of the form $P_\lambda H_N \mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F]$ in $V_{\pm,m}^2$. An application of the energy inequality, Lemma 7.3, implies we have

$$\|P_\lambda H_N \mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F]\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} \lesssim \sup_{\|P_\lambda H_N u\|_{V_{\pm,m}^2} \lesssim 1} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} (P_\lambda H_N u)^\dagger F \, dx \, dt \right|.$$

Thus to bound the V^2 component of $\|\mathcal{I}_m^\pm[F]\|_{F_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,m}}$, it is enough to control $\int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} (P_\lambda H_N u)^\dagger F \, dx \, dt$. Consequently, to estimate the V^2 component of the norms in Theorem 7.5, the key step is to prove the following trilinear estimate. To simplify notation somewhat, we define $\mathbf{B}_\epsilon = (\min\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\} / \max\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\})^\epsilon$ if $M \geq \frac{1}{2}$, and if $0 < M < \frac{1}{2}$ we let

$$\mathbf{B}_\epsilon = \begin{cases} (\min\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\} / \max\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\})^\epsilon, & \mu \ll \max\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\} \text{ or } \mu \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}, \\ 1 + \mu^{-\frac{1}{6} + \sigma} (\min\{N, N_1, N_2\})^{\frac{7}{30}}, & \mu \approx \lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2. \end{cases}$$

Theorem 8.8. *Let $M > 0$. For every $\sigma/100 < \delta \ll 1$ we have*

$$\begin{aligned} &\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3+1}} \phi_{\mu,N} (\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} \, dx \, dt \right| \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^\delta \mathbf{B}_{\min\{\frac{\delta}{8}, \frac{1}{2a} - \frac{1}{4}\}} \|\phi\|_{F_{\mu,N}^{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}} \end{aligned} \tag{8-10}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} &\left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3+1}} \phi_{\mu,N} (\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} \, dx \, dt \right| \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^\delta \mathbf{B}_{\min\{\frac{\delta}{8}, \frac{1}{2a} - \frac{1}{4}\}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi\|_{F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-11}$$

In the region $\lambda_2 \gg \lambda_1$ we have the slightly stronger bound

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3+1}} \phi_{\mu,N} (\Pi_{\pm_1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt \right| \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^\delta \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}\right)^{\frac{\delta}{8}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2,M}^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (8-12)$$

Similarly, when $\mu \ll \lambda_1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3+1}} \phi_{\mu,N} (\Pi_{\pm_1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt \right| \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^\delta \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1}\right)^{\frac{\delta}{8}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2,M}^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (8-13)$$

Proof. We begin by decomposing the modulation (or distance to the relevant characteristic surface) as

$$\begin{aligned} & \phi_{\mu,N} (\Pi_{\pm_1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm_2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} \\ & = \sum_{d \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}} C_d \phi_{\mu,N} (C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm_2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} + C_{< d} \phi_{\mu,N} (C_d^{\pm_1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm_2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} \\ & \quad + C_{< d} \phi_{\mu,N} (C_{< d}^{\pm_1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_d^{\pm_2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} \\ & = \sum_{d \in 2^{\mathbb{Z}}} A_0 + A_1 + A_2. \end{aligned}$$

Keeping in mind (7-11), we now divide the proof into cases depending on the relative sizes of the frequency and the modulation. Namely, we consider separately the low-modulation cases

$$\lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2 \gg \mu \text{ and } d \lesssim \mu, \quad \mu \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\} \text{ and } d \lesssim \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}, \quad \lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2 \approx \mu \text{ and } d \lesssim \mu,$$

and the high-modulation cases

$$\lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2 \gtrsim \mu \text{ and } d \gg \mu, \quad \mu \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\} \text{ and } d \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}.$$

Clearly, this covers all possible frequency combinations. The first case in the low-modulation regime, where the two spinors are high-frequency, is the easiest, as this case interacts very favourably with the null structure. The second case, when $\mu \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$, is more difficult, and is the main obstruction to the scale-invariant Sobolev result. The final case, when $\mu \approx \lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2$, is the only resonant interaction, and this is where the bilinear estimates in Corollary 6.4 play a crucial role. In the remaining high-modulation cases $d \gg \min\{\mu, \lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$, the null structure of the system no longer plays any role, and we need to exploit the $Y_{\lambda,N}^{\pm,m}$ norms to gain the off-diagonal decay term.

High-low, I: $\mu \ll \lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2$ and $d \lesssim \mu$. Our goal is to show that

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{d \ll \lambda_1} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_1 dx dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 dx dt \right| \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} N_{\min}^\delta \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2,M}^2}, \end{aligned} \quad (8-14)$$

where we let $N_{\min} = \min\{N, N_1, N_2\}$. Clearly this gives the bounds (8-10), (8-11), and (8-13).

We now prove the bound (8-14). An application of Lemma 8.7 implies that we must have $\pm_1 = \pm_2$ and moreover, that the sum over the modulation is restricted to the region $\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu$ (in particular this case is nonresonant). To estimate the first term, A_0 , we note that after another application of Lemma 8.7, we have the almost orthogonal decomposition

$$A_0 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha \\ |\kappa - \kappa'| \lesssim \alpha}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \mu}} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1} R_\kappa P_q \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm_2} R_{\kappa'} P_{q'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2},$$

where $\alpha = (d\mu)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lambda_1^{-1}$. Then, using the null-structure by writing

$$C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1} R_\kappa P_{\lambda_1} = C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1, M} (\Pi_{\pm_1} - \Pi_{\pm_1}(\lambda_1 \omega)) R_\kappa P_{\lambda_1} + C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1, M} \Pi_{\pm_1}(\lambda_1 \omega_\kappa) R_\kappa P_{\lambda_1}$$

(here ω_κ denotes the centre of the cap κ) and applying Lemma 8.1, together with the uniform disposability of $C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1, M}$ from (7-1), we obtain for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in \mathcal{C}_\alpha \\ |\kappa - \kappa'| \lesssim \alpha}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \mu}} \alpha \|C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|R_\kappa P_q \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|R_{\kappa'} P_{q'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \alpha^{-\epsilon} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1} \right)^{\frac{1}{2} - \epsilon} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm_1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2, M}^2}, \end{aligned} \tag{8-15}$$

where we used Lemma 7.2 to control the $L_{t,x}^2$ norm of the high-modulation term, and the bound (8-5). On the other hand, we have the decomposition

$$A_0 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa - \kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm_2 \kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} C_d R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\leq d}^{\pm_1} R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm_2} R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2},$$

where $\beta = d^{\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, again by almost orthogonality and Lemma 8.7. As above, we obtain for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa - \kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm_2 \kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \beta \|C_d R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ &\lesssim \beta^{1-\epsilon} d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lambda (\beta N_{\min})^{\frac{1}{4}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm_1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2, M}^2}, \end{aligned} \tag{8-16}$$

where we used the angular concentration Lemma 8.5 on the lowest angular-frequency term. Combining (8-15) and (8-16), by taking $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, we obtain for every $0 < \delta \ll 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu} \left| \int A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu} \left(\frac{d}{\mu} \right)^{\frac{\delta}{4}} N_{\min}^\delta \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda} \right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|P_\mu H_N \phi\|_{V_{\pm_1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2, M}^2} \\ &\lesssim N_{\min}^\delta \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda} \right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm_1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2, M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

which gives (8-14) for the A_0 term. Next, we deal with the A_1 term. The argument is similar to the above, but the initial decomposition is slightly different as we no longer require the cube decomposition. Instead, we need to decompose the ϕ term into caps to ensure that the $C_{<d}$ multiplier is disposable. In more detail, the resonance bound in Lemma 8.7 gives

$$A_1 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in C_\alpha \\ |\kappa - \kappa'| \lesssim \alpha}} \sum_{\substack{\kappa'' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa'' \pm_2 \kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} C_{<d} R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N} (C_d^{\pm 1} R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2},$$

where $\alpha = (d\mu/\lambda_1^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and $\beta = (d/\mu)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. By exploiting the null structure as previously, we then obtain for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int A_1 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in C_\alpha \\ |\kappa - \kappa'| \lesssim \alpha}} \sum_{\substack{\kappa'' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa'' \pm_2 \kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \alpha \|R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \|C_d^{\pm 1} R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \\ &\lesssim \alpha^{1-\epsilon} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lambda_2^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}, \end{aligned} \tag{8-17}$$

where we used Lemma 7.2 to control the $L^2_{t,x}$ norm of the high-modulation term, and again used (8-5). To gain a power of d , we again exploit the angular concentration estimate by exploiting a similar argument to (8-16) to deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int A_1 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa - \kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm_2 \kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \beta \|R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \|C_d^{\pm 1} R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \\ &\lesssim \beta^{1-\epsilon} d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lambda_2^{\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\beta N_{\min})^{\frac{1}{4}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-18}$$

Combining (8-17) and (8-18) as in the A_0 case, and summing up over $\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu$ with ϵ sufficiently small, we obtain (8-14). The remaining term A_2 can be handled in an identical manner to the A_1 . Thus the bound (8-14) follows.

High-low, II: $\mu \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$ and $d \lesssim \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$. Let $\{j, k\} = \{1, 2\}$ and $\lambda_j \geq \lambda_k$. Our goal is to prove that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{d \lesssim \lambda_k} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_j dx dt \right| \\ \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} N_{\min}^\delta \left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\mu} \right)^{\frac{1}{8}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-19}$$

On the other hand, for the A_k term, we have the weaker bounds

$$\sum_{d \lesssim \lambda_k} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_k dx dt \right| \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\mu} \right)^{\frac{8}{5}} (\min\{N, N_j\})^\delta \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}} \tag{8-20}$$

and

$$\sum_{d \lesssim \lambda_k} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_k dx dt \right| \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\mu} \right)^{\frac{1}{2a} - \frac{1}{4}} N_k^\delta \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \begin{cases} \|\psi\|_{F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}, & k = 1, \\ \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, 1}^2} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}, & k = 2, \end{cases} \quad (8-21)$$

where

$$\frac{1}{2} < \frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sigma}{1000}$$

is as in the definition of the $Y_{\lambda, N}^{\pm, m}$ norm. Clearly (8-19), (8-20), and (8-21) give the estimates claimed in Theorem 8.8. Note that we have a weaker bound when the low-frequency term has modulation away from the hyperboloid, and for this interaction, we are forced to exploit the $Y_{\lambda, N}^{\pm, m}$ norms.

We begin the proof of (8-19), (8-20), and (8-21) by observing that since the estimate is essentially symmetric in ψ and φ , it is enough to consider the case $\mu \approx \lambda_1 \gg \lambda_2$; in other words, we only consider the case $j = 1$ and $k = 2$. As in the previous case, Lemma 8.7 implies that we only have a nonzero contribution if $\pm_1 = +$ and $\lambda_2^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \lambda_2$. To control the A_0 term, we decompose into caps of radius $\beta = (d/\lambda_2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and cubes of diameter λ_2 . Lemma 8.7 implies that we have the almost orthogonality identity

$$A_0 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \lambda_2}} P_{q'} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (P_q R_\kappa C_{\leq d}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}.$$

Thus exploiting the null structure as previously, disposing of the $C_d^{\pm, m}$ multipliers using (7-1), and applying the $L_{t,x}^4$ Strichartz estimate, we obtain for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \lambda_2}} \beta \|P_{q'} C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|P_q R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ &\lesssim \beta^{-\epsilon} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu} \right)^{\frac{1}{4} - \epsilon} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (8-22)$$

On the other hand, by decomposing into

$$A_0 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} R_{\kappa''} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (R_\kappa C_{\leq d}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}$$

and using the angular concentration bound Lemma 8.5 on the smallest angular-frequency term, a similar argument gives

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \beta \|C_d R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \beta^{\frac{1}{4} - \epsilon} N_{\min}^{\frac{1}{4}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (8-23)$$

As in the previous case, combining (8-22) and (8-23) with ϵ sufficiently small gives (8-19) for the A_0 term. The A_1 term can be estimated by an identical argument (since the high-modulation term is again at frequency μ). To control the A_2 component, we start by again applying Lemma 8.7 and decomposing into

$$A_2 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \lambda_2}} P_{q'} C_{<d} \phi_{\mu, N} (P_q R_\kappa C_{\leq d}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2},$$

where as usual $\beta = (d/\lambda_2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Applying the, by now, standard null-form bound, (7-1), and the $L_{t,x}^4$ Strichartz estimate, we conclude that for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \lambda_2}} \beta \|P_{q'} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|P_q R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|R_{\kappa'} C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \beta^{-\epsilon} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_2}\right)^\epsilon \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{+,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-24}$$

Note that we get no high frequency gain here (in fact we have a slight loss due to the sum over cubes). On the other hand, by decomposing all three terms into caps of size β , using null structure, the $L_t^q L_x^4$ Strichartz estimate in Lemma 8.2, and Bernstein’s inequality followed by Lemma 7.2 for φ_{λ_2, N_2} , we obtain for any $2 < q < 2 + \frac{2}{3}$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \beta \|R_{\kappa''} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_t^q L_x^{4(4-q)}} \|R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_t^q L_x^4} \|R_{\kappa'} C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_t^q L_x^{4q/(5q-8)}} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{d}{\lambda_2}\right)^{\frac{1}{q} - \frac{1}{4} - \epsilon} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{5}{q} - \frac{9}{4}} N_1 \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{+,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2} \end{aligned} \tag{8-25}$$

(schematically, we are putting the product into $L_t^{\infty-} L_x^{2+} \times L_t^{2+} L_x^4 \times L_t^{2+} L_x^{4-}$). Switching the roles of $\phi_{\mu, N}$ and ψ_{λ_1, N_1} , and combining (8-24) and (8-25) with q close to 2, and $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, we obtain (8-20).

It remains to prove (8-21); thus we need to consider the case where φ also has the smallest angular frequency. We begin by again using Lemma 8.7 to get the decomposition

$$A_2 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in C_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q'' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q''| \lesssim \lambda_2}} R_{\kappa''} P_{q''} C_{<d} \phi_{\mu, N} (R_\kappa P_q C_{\leq d}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2},$$

where $\beta = (d/\lambda_2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. An application of Bernstein’s inequality, Lemma 7.2, and the angular concentration lemma for φ , together with the null-form bound, and Lemma 8.2, implies that for any $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently

small

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 \, dx \, dt \right| \\
 & \lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa \mp 2\kappa', |\kappa'' \pm 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q'' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q''| \lesssim \lambda_2}} \beta \|R_{\kappa''} P_q \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_t^{2a/(a-1)} L_x^{2a}} \\
 & \quad \times \|R_\kappa P_q \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_t^{2a/(a-1)} L_x^{2a}} \|R_{\kappa'} C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_t^a L_x^{a/(a-1)}} \\
 & \lesssim \beta^{1-\epsilon} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_2}\right)^\epsilon (\mu \lambda_2)^{1-\frac{1}{a}} (\beta^2 \lambda_2^3)^{\frac{1}{a}-\frac{1}{2}} (\beta N_2)^\delta \|P_\mu H_N \phi\|_{V_{+1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_t^a L_x^2} \\
 & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} N_2^\delta \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2a}-\frac{1}{4}} \left(\frac{d}{\lambda_2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(\frac{\delta}{2}-b+\frac{1}{a})} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi\|_{Y_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}},
 \end{aligned}$$

which gives (8-21) since

$$\frac{1}{2} < \frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sigma}{1000} \quad \text{and} \quad b - \frac{1}{a} = \frac{2}{a} - 1 < \frac{\sigma}{500} < \frac{\delta}{5}.$$

High-high: $\mu \approx \lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2$ and $d \lesssim \mu$. Our goal is to prove that if $M \geq \frac{1}{2}$, then for any $\delta > 0$ we have the bound

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \sum_{d \lesssim \mu} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 \, dx \, dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_1 \, dx \, dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 \, dx \, dt \right| \\
 & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} N_{\min}^\delta \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}, \quad (8-26)
 \end{aligned}$$

while if $0 < M < \frac{1}{2}$, for every $s, \delta > 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} \sum_{d \lesssim \mu} A_0 + A_1 + A_2 \, dx \, dt \right| \\
 & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} N_{\min}^\delta (1 + \mu^{-\frac{1}{6}+s} N_{\min}^{\frac{7}{30}}) \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \quad (8-27)
 \end{aligned}$$

The key difference from the previous cases, is that if $0 < M \leq \frac{1}{2}$, we no longer have the nonresonant bound $d \gtrsim \mu^{-1}$, and thus we also have to estimate the *resonant* interactions $d \ll \mu^{-1}$. This is particularly challenging in light of the fact that in the *strongly resonant regime*, $0 < M < \frac{1}{2}$, there is no gain from the null structure when $d \ll \mu^{-1}$. However, we do have *transversality* in the region $d \ll \mu^{-1}$, and consequently, we can apply the key bilinear restriction estimate in [Corollary 6.4](#). On the other hand, in the *weakly resonant regime*, $M = \frac{1}{2}$, somewhat surprisingly and in stark contrast to the cases $M \neq \frac{1}{2}$, the null structure gives cancellation for *all* modulation scales.

We start by considering the nonresonant region $\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu$. By decomposing into caps of radius $\beta = (d/\mu)^{\frac{1}{2}}$, an application of [Lemma 8.7](#) gives the identity

$$A_0 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\pm 1\kappa \mp 2\kappa', |\kappa'' \pm 2\kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} R_{\kappa''} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (R_\kappa C_{\leq d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}.$$

Thus by applying the $L^4_{t,x}$ Strichartz bound, exploiting the null structure as previously (here we need the assumption $d \gtrsim \mu^{-1}$), and using the angular concentration bound in [Lemma 8.5](#) on N_{\min} , we obtain for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\pm_1 \kappa \mp_2 \kappa'|, |\kappa'' \pm_2 \kappa'| \lesssim \beta}} \beta \|R_{\kappa''} C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|R_\kappa \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \|R_{\kappa'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \\ &\lesssim \beta^{1-\epsilon} d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mu (\beta N_{\min})^\delta \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm_1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm_2, M}}. \end{aligned}$$

Taking $\delta > 0$ and $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, and summing up over the modulation $\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu$ then gives [\(8-26\)](#) and [\(8-27\)](#) for A_0 in the region $\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu$. A similar argument bounds the A_1 and A_2 terms in [\(8-26\)](#) and [\(8-27\)](#), provided the sum over modulation is restricted to $\mu^{-1} \lesssim d \lesssim \mu$.

We now consider the case $d \ll \mu^{-1}$. Note that if $M > \frac{1}{2}$, then using [Lemma 8.7](#), we see that $A_0 = A_1 = A_2 = 0$ and thus [\(8-26\)](#) is immediate. On the other hand, if we are in the weakly resonant regime $M = \frac{1}{2}$, then another application of [Lemma 8.7](#) implies that $\pm_1 = +$ and $\pm_2 = -$, and we have the decomposition

$$A_0 = \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa + \kappa'|, |\kappa'' - \kappa| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\mu^2 \beta} \\ |q + q'| \lesssim \mu^2 \beta}} R_{\kappa''} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (R_\kappa P_q C_{\leq d}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} P_{q'} C_{\leq d}^- \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2},$$

where $\beta = (d/\mu)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Therefore, using the null-form-type bound [\(8-1\)](#), together with (ii) in [Lemma 8.1](#) to exploit the null structure, the orthogonality estimate in [Lemma 8.6](#), and an application of [Lemma 8.2](#) gives for every $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_\beta \\ |\kappa - \kappa'|, |\kappa'' - \kappa| \lesssim \beta}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\mu^2 \beta} \\ |q + q'| \lesssim \mu^2 \beta}} \beta \|R_{\kappa''} C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|R_\kappa P_q \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \|R_{\kappa'} P_{q'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \\ &\lesssim \beta \times d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \times \mu \times \beta^{-\epsilon} (\mu \beta)^{-\epsilon} \times (\beta N_{\min})^\delta \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{+, M}} \|\varphi\|_{V^2_{-, M}}, \end{aligned}$$

where we used the angular concentration bound in [Lemma 8.5](#) on the term with smallest angular frequency. Choosing $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, and summing up over $0 < d \ll \mu^{-1}$ then gives [\(8-26\)](#) for the A_0 term. An identical argument bounds the A_1 and A_2 terms.

It remains to prove [\(8-27\)](#) when $0 < d \ll \mu^{-1}$. Another application of [Lemma 8.7](#), implies that we must have $\pm_1 = +$ and $\pm_2 = -$, as well as the key orthogonality identity

$$\begin{aligned} &\sum_{d \ll \mu^{-1}} A_0 + A_1 + A_2 \\ &= C_{\ll \mu^{-1}} \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\ll \mu^{-1}}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\ll \mu^{-1}}^- \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{\kappa, \kappa', \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_{\mu^{-1}} \\ |\kappa + \kappa'| \lesssim \mu^{-1}}} \sum_{\substack{q, q'' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q - q''| \approx \mu \text{ or } |\kappa - \kappa''| \approx \mu^{-1}}} R_{\kappa''} P_{q''} C_{\ll \mu^{-1}} \phi_{\mu, N} (R_\kappa P_q C_{\ll \mu^{-1}}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 R_{\kappa'} C_{\ll \mu^{-1}}^- \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that the summation is restricted to terms for which $R_{\kappa''} P_{q''} C_{\ll \mu^{-1}} \phi_{\mu, N}$ and $R_{\kappa} P_q C_{\ll \mu^{-1}}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}$ have either angular orthogonality or radial orthogonality. In either case, we may apply [Corollary 6.4](#), via the bound [\(8-7\)](#), the null structure bound in [Lemma 8.1](#), and the Klein–Gordon angular Strichartz estimate in [Lemma 8.3](#), to deduce that for every $\frac{3}{2} < q < \frac{14}{9}$ and $\epsilon > 0$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} \sum_{d \ll \mu^{-1}} A_0 + A_1 + A_2 dx dt \right| \\ & \lesssim \mu^{-1} \sum_{\kappa, \kappa'' \in \mathcal{C}_{\mu^{-1}}} \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\mu} \\ |q - q''| \approx \mu \text{ or } |\kappa - \kappa''| \approx \mu^{-1}}} \|R_{\kappa''} P_{q''} C_{\ll \mu^{-1}} \phi_{\mu, N} (R_{\kappa} P_q C_{\ll \mu^{-1}}^+ \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger\|_{L_{t,x}^q} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^{q'}} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{5}{q} - 3 + \epsilon} N_2^{7(\frac{7}{10} - \frac{1}{q}) + \epsilon} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm, M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where for ease of reading we suppressed the $\Pi_{\pm}(\omega_{\kappa})$ matrices used to extract the null-form gain of μ^{-1} . Choosing q sufficiently close to $\frac{3}{2}$, and $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, then gives [\(8-27\)](#) in the case $N_2 = N_{\min}$. To deal with remaining cases, we just reverse the roles of ϕ , ψ , and φ , again apply [Lemma 8.7](#) to deduce the required transversality, and always use the angular Strichartz estimate from [Lemma 8.3](#) on the term with smallest angular frequency. This completes the proof of [\(8-27\)](#).

High modulation, I: $\mu \lesssim \lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2$ and $d \gg \mu$. In this region, our goal is to prove that

$$\sum_{d \gg \mu} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_1 dx dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 dx dt \right| \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1} \right)^{\frac{1}{8}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2} \tag{8-28}$$

and for every $\delta > 0$, the weaker bounds

$$\sum_{d \gg \mu} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1} \right)^{\frac{\delta}{8}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^{\delta} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}, \tag{8-29}$$

$$\sum_{d \gg \mu} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1} \right)^{\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{2}} \|\phi\|_{Y_{\mu, N}^{+, 1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}, \tag{8-30}$$

where a is as in the definition of the $Y_{\lambda, N}^{\pm, m}$ norm. We start with proving the estimates [\(8-29\)](#) and [\(8-30\)](#), under the additional restriction of the sums to the range $d \gtrsim \lambda_1$.

To bound the A_0 component, decomposing ψ and φ into cubes of size μ , together with an application of the $L_{t,x}^4$ Strichartz estimate gives for all $\epsilon > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| \lesssim \sum_{\substack{q, q' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\mu} \\ |q - q'| \lesssim \mu}} \|C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|P_q \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|P_{q'} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{\mu} \right)^{\epsilon} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{d} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-31}$$

As in the proof of (8-25), if we instead apply the $L_t^q L_x^4$ bound, together with Bernstein’s inequality for ϕ , we obtain for any $2 < q < 2 + \frac{2}{11}$

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \|C_d \phi_{\mu,N}\|_{L_t^q L_x^{4q/(5q-8)}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{L_t^q L_x^4} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{L_t^{q/(q-2)} L_x^{2q/(4-q)}} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{d}\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1}\right)^{\frac{6}{q}-\frac{11}{4}} N_1 \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2,M}^2} \end{aligned} \quad (8-32)$$

(schematically, we are putting the product into $L_t^{2+} L_x^{4-} \times L_t^{2+} L_x^4 \times L_t^{\infty-} L_x^{2+}$). Switching the roles of ψ_{λ_1,N_1} and φ_{λ_2,N_2} , and combining (8-31) and (8-32) with q sufficiently close to 2 and $\epsilon > 0$ sufficiently small, followed by summing up over $d \gtrsim \lambda_1$, we obtain (8-29). On the other hand, to obtain (8-30), we again use Lemma 8.2 to deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{q,q' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q-q'| \lesssim \mu}} \|C_d \phi_{\mu,N}\|_{L_t^q L_x^{a/(a-1)}} \|P_q \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{L_t^{2a/(a-1)} L_x^{2a}} \|P_{q'} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{L_t^{2a/(a-1)} L_x^{2a}} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{d}\right)^b \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda}\right)^{b+\frac{1}{a}-1-\epsilon} \|\phi\|_{Y_{\mu,N}^{\pm,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2,M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

which then gives (8-30) if we choose ϵ sufficiently small as

$$\frac{1}{a} > \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad b + \frac{1}{a} - 1 = 4\left(\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

(here a, b are as in the definition of the $Y_\lambda^{\pm,m}$ norm).

We now turn to the estimates for A_1 and A_2 . By symmetry, it is enough to consider the A_1 term. After decomposing into cubes of size μ and applying the $L_{t,x}^4$ Strichartz estimate, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_1 dt dx \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{q,q' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q-q'| \lesssim \mu}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|C_d^{\pm 1} P_q \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|P_{q'} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}-\epsilon} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{d}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm_1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm_2,M}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Summing up over $d \gtrsim \lambda_1$ and choosing ϵ sufficiently small then gives (8-28).

Next, we consider the parts of the sums where $\mu \ll d \ll \lambda_1$. Since $\mathfrak{M}_{\pm_1, \pm_2} \lesssim d \ll \lambda_1$, we must have $\pm_1 = \pm_2$; hence $\mathfrak{M}_{\pm_1, \pm_2} \lesssim \mu$.

For A_0 this implies the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_d \phi_{\mu,N} (C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt \\ &\quad + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_d \phi_{\mu,N} (C_{\ll d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\approx d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt. \end{aligned} \quad (8-33)$$

Concerning the first term, using null-structure,

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_d \phi_{\mu,N} (C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt \right| \\ & \lesssim \frac{\mu}{\lambda_1} \sum_{\substack{q,q' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q-q'| \lesssim \mu}} \|C_d \phi_{\mu,N}\|_{L_t^2 L_x^\infty} \|P_q C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|P_{q'} C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim \left(\frac{d}{\mu}\right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1}\right)^{1-\epsilon} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2,M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

which can be summed up with respect to $\mu \ll d \ll \lambda_1$. The second term in (8-33) can be treated along the same lines.

Similarly, for A_1 we have the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_1 dx dt &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_{\approx d} \phi_{\mu,N} (C_d^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt \\ &+ \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_{\ll d} \phi_{\mu,N} (C_d^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\approx d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt. \end{aligned} \tag{8-34}$$

The first term can be estimated the same way as the first contribution to A_0 . For the second term, we use the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_{\ll d} \phi_{\mu,N} (C_d^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\approx d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2} dx dt \right| \\ & \lesssim \frac{\mu}{\lambda_1} \sum_{\substack{q,q' \in \mathcal{Q}_\mu \\ |q-q'| \lesssim \mu}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{L_{t,x}^\infty} \|P_q C_d^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|P_{q'} C_{\approx d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \\ & \lesssim \left(\frac{d}{\mu}\right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda_1}\right)^{1-\epsilon} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2,M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

which, as above, can be summed up with respect to $\mu \ll d \ll \lambda_1$.

A similar argument treats the A_2 term.

High modulation, II: $\mu \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$ and $d \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$. Our goal is to prove the bound

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{d \gg \min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_0 dx dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_1 dx dt \right| + \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 dx dt \right| \\ \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2,M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-35}$$

As the estimate is essentially symmetric in λ_1 and λ_2 , we may assume that $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2$.

First, we consider the contribution to the sum where $d \gtrsim \mu$. The bound for A_0 follows by decomposing into cubes of size λ_2 and applying the standard $L_{t,x}^4$ Strichartz estimate to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3+1}} A_0 dt dx \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{q,q'' \in \mathcal{Q}_{\lambda_2} \\ |q-q''| \lesssim \lambda_2}} \|C_d P_{q''} \phi_{\mu,N}\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \|P_q \psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{3}{4}-\epsilon} \left(\frac{\mu}{d}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu,N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\psi_{\lambda_1,N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1,M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2,N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2,M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

which easily gives (8-35) in the range $d \gtrsim \mu$ for the A_0 term, provided we choose ϵ sufficiently small. The proof for the A_1 term is identical (as we do not exploit any null structure here). On the other hand, to estimate the A_2 term, we again decompose into cubes of size λ_2 and apply the $L^4_{t,x}$ Strichartz estimate to deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{3+1}} A_2 dt dx \right| &\lesssim \sum_{\substack{q, q'' \in Q_{\lambda_2} \\ |q - q''| \lesssim \lambda_2}} \|P_{q''} \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \|P_q \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^4_{t,x}} \|C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \\ &\lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2} - \epsilon} \left(\frac{\mu}{d}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore (8-35) follows in the range $d \gtrsim \mu$.

Second, we consider the contribution to the sum where $\lambda_2 \ll d \ll \mu$. Concerning A_0 , as in the first high modulation case, we have the decomposition (8-33). To bound the first term in (8-33), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} dx dt \right| &\lesssim \|C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|C_{\leq d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L^\infty_{t,x}} \\ &\lesssim \left(\frac{d}{\lambda_2}\right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned}$$

To bound the second term in (8-33), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_d \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\ll d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_{\approx d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} dx dt \right| &\lesssim \|C_d \phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|C_{\ll d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} \|C_{\approx d}^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_t^2 L_x^\infty} \\ &\lesssim \left(\frac{d}{\lambda_2}\right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned}$$

Concerning A_1 , as in the first high-modulation case, we have the decomposition (8-34), and we can repeat the argument above for the A_0 terms.

Concerning A_2 , we have the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} A_2 dx dt &= \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_{\approx d} \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\leq d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} dx dt \\ &\quad + \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_{\ll d} \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} dx dt. \end{aligned}$$

The first term can be treated in the same manner as the second contribution to A_0 . For the second term we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} C_{\ll d} \phi_{\mu, N} (C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} dx dt \right| &\lesssim \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} \|C_{\approx d}^{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{L^2_{t,x}} \|C_d^{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_t^2 L_x^\infty} \\ &\lesssim \left(\frac{d}{\lambda_2}\right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V^2_{+,1}} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V^2_{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V^2_{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

8D. Proof of Theorem 7.5. We begin with the proof of (7-9). An application of the energy inequality in Lemma 7.3 gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} \Pi_{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \\ & \lesssim \sup_{\|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \lesssim 1} \left| \int_{\mathbb{R}^{1+3}} \phi_{\mu, N} (\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2} dx dt \right|. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore an application of (8-10) in Theorem 8.8 implies

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} \Pi_{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\frac{\sigma}{4}} \mathbf{B}_{\min\{\frac{\sigma}{32}, \frac{1}{2a} - \frac{1}{4}\}} \|\phi\|_{F_{\mu, N}^{+1}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}, \end{aligned} \tag{8-36}$$

which gives the required bound (7-9) for the $F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}$ component of the norm. To complete the proof of (7-9), it remains show that there exists $\epsilon > 0$ such that

$$\|\Pi_{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{Y_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\frac{\sigma}{2}} \mathbf{B}_\epsilon \|\phi\|_{F_{\mu, N}^{+1}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}. \tag{8-37}$$

To this end, we consider separately the cases $\lambda_1 \ll \lambda_2$ and $\lambda_1 \gtrsim \lambda_2$. In the former region, note that an application of (8-12) in Theorem 8.8 together with the energy inequality Lemma 7.3, and the $L_{t,x}^2$ bound in Lemma 7.2, gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_{t,x}^2} \\ & \lesssim d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} \Pi_{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \\ & \lesssim d^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\frac{\sigma}{4}} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}\right)^{\frac{\sigma}{32}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-38}$$

On the other hand, since we are localised away from the hyperboloid we have by (7-7) together with Lemma 8.2

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \lesssim d^{-1} \|P_{\lambda_1} (\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2})\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_{t,x}^4} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_t^{12/5} L_x^4} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \lambda_2^{\frac{1}{3}} N_2 \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-39}$$

Repeating this argument but instead putting $\phi \in L_t^{\frac{12}{5}} L_x^4$ and $\varphi \in L_{t,x}^4$ we deduce that, since $\lambda_1 \ll \lambda_2 \approx \mu$,

$$\begin{aligned} & d \lambda_1^{-\frac{1}{3}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \min\{N, N_2\} \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-40}$$

Note that this bound is far too weak to be useful on its own, as we have $\lambda_1 \ll \lambda_2$. On the other hand, if we combine (8-38) and (8-40), and use the convexity of the L_t^p spaces, we deduce that if we let $0 < \theta < 1$

be given by

$$\frac{1}{a} = \frac{2\theta}{3} + \frac{1-\theta}{2},$$

then, as this forces $b = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \theta)$, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} & \lambda_1^{\frac{1}{a}-b} d^b \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^q L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim (d \lambda_1^{-\frac{1}{3}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2})^\theta \\ & \quad \times (d^{\frac{1}{2}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_{t,x}^2})^{1-\theta} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\theta + \frac{\sigma}{4}(1-\theta)} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}\right)^{\frac{\sigma}{32}(1-\theta) - \frac{1}{3}\theta} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\frac{1}{2} < \frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sigma}{1000},$$

it is easy enough to check that $\frac{1}{32}\sigma(1 - \theta) - \frac{1}{3}\theta > 0$, and hence (8-37) holds when $\lambda_1 \ll \lambda_2$. We now consider the case $\lambda_1 \gtrsim \lambda_2$. The proof is similar to the previous case; the main difference is that we need a more refined version of the bound (8-40). To this end, by decomposing φ into cubes of size $\min\{\mu, \lambda_2\}$, we deduce that by Lemma 8.2 and Lemma 8.6, for every $\epsilon' > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} \|(\|\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} P_q \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_x^2}^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}\|_{L_t^{3/2}} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{L_t^{12/5} L_x^4} \left(\sum_{q \in \mathcal{Q}_{\min\{\mu, \lambda_2\}}} \|P_q \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{L_{t,x}^4}^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} \mu^{\frac{1}{3}} N (\min\{\mu, \lambda_2\})^{\frac{1}{4}-\epsilon'} \lambda_2^{\frac{1}{4}+\epsilon'} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since $(\min\{\mu, \lambda_2\})^{\frac{1}{4}-\epsilon'} \leq \mu^{\frac{1}{6}} \lambda_2^{\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{6}+\epsilon'}$ (for ϵ' sufficiently small) and $\lambda_2 \lesssim \lambda_1$, by using the bound (8-39),

$$\begin{aligned} & d \lambda_1^{-\frac{1}{3}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} \min\{N, N_2\} \|\phi_{\mu, N}\|_{V_{+,1}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{8-41}$$

Note that, unlike the bound (8-41), we have no high-frequency loss here. As in the case $\lambda_1 \ll \lambda_2$, we now combine the bound (8-36) with (8-41), and deduce by the convexity of the L_t^p norm and Lemma 7.2 that

$$\begin{aligned} & \lambda_1^{\frac{1}{a}-b} d^b \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^q L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim (d \lambda_1^{-\frac{1}{3}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2})^\theta \\ & \quad \times (d^{\frac{1}{2}} \|P_{\lambda_1} H_{N_1} C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_M^{\pm 1} [\phi_{\mu, N} \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}]\|_{L_{t,x}^2})^{1-\theta} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\theta + \frac{\sigma}{4}(1-\theta)} \mathbf{B}_{\min\{\frac{\sigma}{32}, \frac{1}{2a}-\frac{1}{4}\}}^{1-\theta} \|\phi\|_{F_{\mu, N}^{+,1}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned}$$

Since $0 < \theta \ll \sigma$, we obtain (8-37). Therefore, the bound (7-9) follows.

We now turn to the proof of the second inequality (7-10). The argument is similar to the proof of (7-9) so we will be brief. An application of the energy inequality in Lemma 7.3 together with (8-11) in Theorem 8.8 implies

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_\mu H_N \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \|_{V_{\pm, 1}^2} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^{\frac{\sigma}{4}} \mathbf{B}_{\min\{\frac{\sigma}{32}, \frac{1}{2a} - \frac{1}{4}\}} \|\psi\|_{F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}. \end{aligned} \quad (8-42)$$

Therefore it only remains to prove that there exists $\epsilon > 0$ such that

$$\|\mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \|_{Y_{\mu, N}^{+, 1}} \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N, N_2\})^{\frac{\sigma}{2}} \mathbf{B}_\epsilon \|\psi\|_{F_{\lambda_1, N_1}^{\pm 1, M}} \|\varphi\|_{F_{\lambda_2, N_2}^{\pm 2, M}}. \quad (8-43)$$

Similar to the proof of (8-37), we consider separately the cases $\mu \ll \lambda_1$ and $\mu \gtrsim \lambda_1$. In the former case, as in (8-41), since we are localised away from the hyperboloid we have by (7-7) together with Lemma 8.2

$$\begin{aligned} & \|P_\mu H_N C_d^{\pm 1} \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} \|P_\mu ((\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}) \|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim d^{-1} (\min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\})^{\frac{1}{3}} (\max\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\})^{\frac{1}{2}} \min\{N_1, N_2\} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (8-44)$$

Since $\lambda_1 \approx \lambda_2$, we can replace the max and min in (8-44) with $\lambda_1^{\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{2}}$. If we now combine (8-44) with the energy inequality in Lemma 7.3, the bound (8-13) in Theorem 8.8, and Lemma 7.2, we deduce that by the convexity of the L_t^p spaces that

$$\begin{aligned} & \mu^{\frac{1}{a} - b} d^b \|P_\mu H_N C_d^+ \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \|_{L_t^q L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim (d\mu^{-\frac{1}{3}} \|P_\mu C_d^+ \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2})^\theta \\ & \quad \times (d^{\frac{1}{2}} \|P_\mu C_d^+ \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \|_{L_{t,x}^2})^{1-\theta} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^{\theta + \frac{\sigma}{4}(1-\theta)} \left(\frac{\lambda_1}{\mu}\right)^{\frac{\sigma}{32}(1-\theta) - \frac{5}{6}\theta} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, M}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, M}^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where as previously, we have

$$\frac{1}{a} = \frac{2\theta}{3} + \frac{1-\theta}{2},$$

which implies $b = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \theta)$. Since

$$\frac{1}{2} < \frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sigma}{1000},$$

it is easy enough to check that $\frac{1}{32}\sigma(1 - \theta) - \frac{5}{6}\theta > 0$, and hence (8-43) holds when $\mu \ll \lambda_1$. We now consider the case $\mu \gtrsim \lambda_1$. Since we now have

$$(\min\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\})^{\frac{1}{3}} (\max\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\})^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{2}},$$

an application of (8-44), together with (8-42), Lemma 7.2 gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \mu^{\frac{1}{a}-b} d^b \left\| P_\mu H_N C_d^+ \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \right\|_{L_t^a L_x^2} \\ & \lesssim (d\mu^{-\frac{1}{3}} \left\| P_\mu C_d^+ \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \right\|_{L_t^{3/2} L_x^2})^\theta \\ & \quad \times (d^{\frac{1}{2}} \left\| P_\mu C_d^+ \mathcal{I}_1^+ [(\Pi_{\pm 1} \psi_{\lambda_1, N_1})^\dagger \gamma^0 \Pi_{\pm 2} \varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}] \right\|_{L_{t,x}^2})^{1-\theta} \\ & \lesssim \mu^{\frac{1}{2}} (\min\{N_1, N_2\})^{\theta + \frac{\sigma}{4}(1-\theta)} \mathbf{B}_{\min\{\frac{\sigma}{32}, \frac{1}{2a} - \frac{1}{4}\}}^{1-\theta} \|\psi_{\lambda_1, N_1}\|_{V_{\pm 1, \mathcal{M}}^2} \|\varphi_{\lambda_2, N_2}\|_{V_{\pm 2, \mathcal{M}}^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since $0 < \theta \ll \sigma$ and $1/a > 1/2$, we obtain (8-43). Therefore, the bound (7-9) follows. This completes the proof of Theorem 7.5.

References

- [Bachelot 1988] A. Bachelot, “Problème de Cauchy global pour des systèmes de Dirac–Klein–Gordon”, *Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Phys. Théor.* **48**:4 (1988), 387–422. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bejenaru 2017] I. Bejenaru, “Optimal bilinear restriction estimates for general hypersurfaces and the role of the shape operator”, *Internat. Math. Res. Notices* **2017**:23 (2017), 7109–7147.
- [Bejenaru and Herr 2011] I. Bejenaru and S. Herr, “Convolutions of singular measures and applications to the Zakharov system”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **261**:2 (2011), 478–506. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bejenaru and Herr 2015] I. Bejenaru and S. Herr, “The cubic Dirac equation: small initial data in $H^1(\mathbb{R}^3)$ ”, *Comm. Math. Phys.* **335**:1 (2015), 43–82. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bejenaru and Herr 2017] I. Bejenaru and S. Herr, “On global well-posedness and scattering for the massive Dirac–Klein–Gordon system”, *J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS)* **19**:8 (2017), 2445–2467. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bejenaru et al. 2009] I. Bejenaru, S. Herr, J. Holmer, and D. Tataru, “On the 2D Zakharov system with L^2 -Schrödinger data”, *Nonlinearity* **22**:5 (2009), 1063–1089. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bejenaru et al. 2010] I. Bejenaru, S. Herr, and D. Tataru, “A convolution estimate for two-dimensional hypersurfaces”, *Rev. Mat. Iberoam.* **26**:2 (2010), 707–728. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bennett and Bez 2010] J. Bennett and N. Bez, “Some nonlinear Brascamp–Lieb inequalities and applications to harmonic analysis”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **259**:10 (2010), 2520–2556. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bennett et al. 2005] J. Bennett, A. Carbery, and J. Wright, “A non-linear generalisation of the Loomis–Whitney inequality and applications”, *Math. Res. Lett.* **12**:4 (2005), 443–457. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bennett et al. 2006] J. Bennett, A. Carbery, and T. Tao, “On the multilinear restriction and Kakeya conjectures”, *Acta Math.* **196**:2 (2006), 261–302. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bjorken and Drell 1964] J. D. Bjorken and S. D. Drell, *Relativistic quantum mechanics*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1964. [MR](#)
- [Bourgain 1991] J. Bourgain, “On the restriction and multiplier problems in \mathbb{R}^3 ”, pp. 179–191 in *Geometric aspects of functional analysis (1989–90)*, edited by V. D. Milman and J. Lindenstrauss, Lecture Notes in Math. **1469**, Springer, 1991. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bourgain 1995] J. Bourgain, “Estimates for cone multipliers”, pp. 41–60 in *Geometric aspects of functional analysis (Israel, 1992–1994)*, edited by J. Lindenstrauss and V. Milman, Oper. Theory Adv. Appl. **77**, Birkhäuser, Basel, 1995. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Bourgain 1998] J. Bourgain, “Refinements of Strichartz’ inequality and applications to 2D-NLS with critical nonlinearity”, *Internat. Math. Res. Notices* **1998**:5 (1998), 253–283. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Buschenhenke et al. 2017] S. Buschenhenke, D. Müller, and A. Vargas, “A Fourier restriction theorem for a two-dimensional surface of finite type”, *Anal. PDE* **10**:4 (2017), 817–891. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Chadam and Glassey 1974] J. M. Chadam and R. T. Glassey, “On certain global solutions of the Cauchy problem for the (classical) coupled Klein–Gordon–Dirac equations in one and three space dimensions”, *Arch. Rational Mech. Anal.* **54** (1974), 223–237. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)

- [Cho and Lee 2013] Y. Cho and S. Lee, “Strichartz estimates in spherical coordinates”, *Indiana Univ. Math. J.* **62**:3 (2013), 991–1020. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [D’Ancona et al. 2007] P. D’Ancona, D. Foschi, and S. Selberg, “Null structure and almost optimal local regularity for the Dirac–Klein–Gordon system”, *J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS)* **9**:4 (2007), 877–899. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Foschi and Klainerman 2000] D. Foschi and S. Klainerman, “Bilinear space-time estimates for homogeneous wave equations”, *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4)* **33**:2 (2000), 211–274. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Ginibre et al. 1997] J. Ginibre, Y. Tsutsumi, and G. Velo, “On the Cauchy problem for the Zakharov system”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **151**:2 (1997), 384–436. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Hadac et al. 2009] M. Hadac, S. Herr, and H. Koch, “Well-posedness and scattering for the KP-II equation in a critical space”, *Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Anal. Non Linéaire* **26**:3 (2009), 917–941. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Keel and Tao 1998] M. Keel and T. Tao, “Endpoint Strichartz estimates”, *Amer. J. Math.* **120**:5 (1998), 955–980. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Klainerman and Machedon 1993] S. Klainerman and M. Machedon, “Space-time estimates for null forms and the local existence theorem”, *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **46**:9 (1993), 1221–1268. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Klainerman and Selberg 2002] S. Klainerman and S. Selberg, “Bilinear estimates and applications to nonlinear wave equations”, *Commun. Contemp. Math.* **4**:2 (2002), 223–295. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Klainerman et al. 2002] S. Klainerman, I. Rodnianski, and T. Tao, “A physical space approach to wave equation bilinear estimates”, *J. Anal. Math.* **87** (2002), 299–336. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Koch and Steinerberger 2015] H. Koch and S. Steinerberger, “Convolution estimates for singular measures and some global nonlinear Brascamp–Lieb inequalities”, *Proc. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh Sect. A* **145**:6 (2015), 1223–1237. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Koch and Tataru 2005] H. Koch and D. Tataru, “Dispersive estimates for principally normal pseudodifferential operators”, *Comm. Pure Appl. Math.* **58**:2 (2005), 217–284. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Koch et al. 2014] H. Koch, D. Tataru, and M. Vişan, *Dispersive equations and nonlinear waves: generalized Korteweg–de Vries, nonlinear Schrödinger, wave and Schrödinger maps*, Oberwolfach Seminars **45**, Springer, 2014. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Lee 2006a] S. Lee, “Bilinear restriction estimates for surfaces with curvatures of different signs”, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **358**:8 (2006), 3511–3533. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Lee 2006b] S. Lee, “Linear and bilinear estimates for oscillatory integral operators related to restriction to hypersurfaces”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **241**:1 (2006), 56–98. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Lee and Vargas 2008] S. Lee and A. Vargas, “Sharp null form estimates for the wave equation”, *Amer. J. Math.* **130**:5 (2008), 1279–1326. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Lee and Vargas 2010] S. Lee and A. Vargas, “Restriction estimates for some surfaces with vanishing curvatures”, *J. Funct. Anal.* **258**:9 (2010), 2884–2909. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Lee et al. 2008] S. Lee, K. M. Rogers, and A. Vargas, “Sharp null form estimates for the wave equation in \mathbb{R}^{3+1} ”, *Int. Math. Res. Not.* **2008** (2008), art. id. rnn096. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Machihara et al. 2003] S. Machihara, K. Nakanishi, and T. Ozawa, “Small global solutions and the nonrelativistic limit for the nonlinear Dirac equation”, *Rev. Mat. Iberoamericana* **19**:1 (2003), 179–194. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Moyua et al. 1999] A. Moyua, A. Vargas, and L. Vega, “Restriction theorems and maximal operators related to oscillatory integrals in \mathbb{R}^3 ”, *Duke Math. J.* **96**:3 (1999), 547–574. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Stein 1993] E. M. Stein, *Harmonic analysis: real-variable methods, orthogonality, and oscillatory integrals*, Princeton Mathematical Series **43**, Princeton University Press, 1993. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Stein and Weiss 1971] E. M. Stein and G. Weiss, *Introduction to Fourier analysis on Euclidean spaces*, Princeton Mathematical Series **32**, Princeton University Press, 1971. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Sterbenz 2005] J. Sterbenz, “Angular regularity and Strichartz estimates for the wave equation”, *Int. Math. Res. Not.* **2005**:4 (2005), 187–231. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Sterbenz and Tataru 2010] J. Sterbenz and D. Tataru, “Energy dispersed large data wave maps in $2 + 1$ dimensions”, *Comm. Math. Phys.* **298**:1 (2010), 139–230. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Strichartz 1972] R. S. Strichartz, “Multipliers for spherical harmonic expansions”, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **167** (1972), 115–124. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)

- [Strichartz 1977] R. S. Strichartz, “Restrictions of Fourier transforms to quadratic surfaces and decay of solutions of wave equations”, *Duke Math. J.* **44**:3 (1977), 705–714. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Tao 2001] T. Tao, “Endpoint bilinear restriction theorems for the cone, and some sharp null form estimates”, *Math. Z.* **238**:2 (2001), 215–268. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Tao 2003] T. Tao, “A sharp bilinear restrictions estimate for paraboloids”, *Geom. Funct. Anal.* **13**:6 (2003), 1359–1384. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Tao 2004] T. Tao, “Some recent progress on the restriction conjecture”, pp. 217–243 in *Fourier analysis and convexity*, Birkhäuser, Boston, 2004. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Tao and Vargas 2000a] T. Tao and A. Vargas, “A bilinear approach to cone multipliers, I: Restriction estimates”, *Geom. Funct. Anal.* **10**:1 (2000), 185–215. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Tao and Vargas 2000b] T. Tao and A. Vargas, “A bilinear approach to cone multipliers, II: Applications”, *Geom. Funct. Anal.* **10**:1 (2000), 216–258. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Tao et al. 1998] T. Tao, A. Vargas, and L. Vega, “A bilinear approach to the restriction and Keakeya conjectures”, *J. Amer. Math. Soc.* **11**:4 (1998), 967–1000. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Wang 2015] X. Wang, “On global existence of 3D charge critical Dirac–Klein–Gordon system”, *Int. Math. Res. Not.* **2015**:21 (2015), 10801–10846. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)
- [Wolff 2001] T. Wolff, “A sharp bilinear cone restriction estimate”, *Ann. of Math. (2)* **153**:3 (2001), 661–698. [MR](#) [Zbl](#)

Received 9 May 2017. Revised 19 Oct 2017. Accepted 29 Nov 2017.

TIMOTHY CANDY: tcandy@math.uni-bielefeld.de
Universität Bielefeld, Fakultät für Mathematik, Bielefeld, Germany

SEBASTIAN HERR: herr@math.uni-bielefeld.de
Universität Bielefeld, Fakultät für Mathematik, Bielefeld, Germany

Analysis & PDE

msp.org/apde

EDITORS

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Patrick Gérard

patrick.gerard@math.u-psud.fr

Université Paris Sud XI

Orsay, France

BOARD OF EDITORS

Massimiliano Berti	Scuola Intern. Sup. di Studi Avanzati, Italy berti@sissa.it	Clément Mouhot	Cambridge University, UK c.mouhot@dpmms.cam.ac.uk
Sun-Yung Alice Chang	Princeton University, USA chang@math.princeton.edu	Werner Müller	Universität Bonn, Germany mueller@math.uni-bonn.de
Michael Christ	University of California, Berkeley, USA mchrist@math.berkeley.edu	Gilles Pisier	Texas A&M University, and Paris 6 pisier@math.tamu.edu
Alessio Figalli	ETH Zurich, Switzerland alessio.figalli@math.ethz.ch	Tristan Rivière	ETH, Switzerland riviere@math.ethz.ch
Charles Fefferman	Princeton University, USA cf@math.princeton.edu	Igor Rodnianski	Princeton University, USA irod@math.princeton.edu
Ursula Hamenstaedt	Universität Bonn, Germany ursula@math.uni-bonn.de	Sylvia Serfaty	New York University, USA serfaty@cims.nyu.edu
Vaughan Jones	U.C. Berkeley & Vanderbilt University vaughan.f.jones@vanderbilt.edu	Yum-Tong Siu	Harvard University, USA siu@math.harvard.edu
Vadim Kaloshin	University of Maryland, USA vadim.kaloshin@gmail.com	Terence Tao	University of California, Los Angeles, USA tao@math.ucla.edu
Herbert Koch	Universität Bonn, Germany koch@math.uni-bonn.de	Michael E. Taylor	Univ. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, USA met@math.unc.edu
Izabella Laba	University of British Columbia, Canada ilaba@math.ubc.ca	Gunther Uhlmann	University of Washington, USA gunther@math.washington.edu
Gilles Lebeau	Université de Nice Sophia Antipolis, France lebeau@unice.fr	András Vasy	Stanford University, USA andras@math.stanford.edu
Richard B. Melrose	Massachusetts Inst. of Tech., USA rbb@math.mit.edu	Dan Virgil Voiculescu	University of California, Berkeley, USA dvv@math.berkeley.edu
Frank Merle	Université de Cergy-Pontoise, France Frank.Merle@u-cergy.fr	Steven Zelditch	Northwestern University, USA zelditch@math.northwestern.edu
William Minicozzi II	Johns Hopkins University, USA minicozz@math.jhu.edu	Maciej Zworski	University of California, Berkeley, USA zworski@math.berkeley.edu

PRODUCTION

production@msp.org

Silvio Levy, Scientific Editor


See inside back cover or msp.org/apde for submission instructions.

The subscription price for 2018 is US \$275/year for the electronic version, and \$480/year (+\$55, if shipping outside the US) for print and electronic. Subscriptions, requests for back issues from the last three years and changes of subscriber address should be sent to MSP.

Analysis & PDE (ISSN 1948-206X electronic, 2157-5045 printed) at Mathematical Sciences Publishers, 798 Evans Hall #3840, c/o University of California, Berkeley, CA 94720-3840, is published continuously online. Periodical rate postage paid at Berkeley, CA 94704, and additional mailing offices.

APDE peer review and production are managed by EditFlow[®] from MSP.

PUBLISHED BY

 **mathematical sciences publishers**
nonprofit scientific publishing

<http://msp.org/>

© 2018 Mathematical Sciences Publishers

ANALYSIS & PDE

Volume 11 No. 5 2018

Large sets avoiding patterns	1083
ROBERT FRASER and MALABIKA PRAMANIK	
On minimizers of an isoperimetric problem with long-range interactions under a convexity constraint	1113
MICHAEL GOLDMAN, MATTEO NOVAGA and BERARDO RUFFINI	
Nonautonomous maximal L^p -regularity under fractional Sobolev regularity in time	1143
STEPHAN FACKLER	
Transference of bilinear restriction estimates to quadratic variation norms and the Dirac–Klein–Gordon system	1171
TIMOTHY CANDY and SEBASTIAN HERR	
Well-posedness and smoothing effect for generalized nonlinear Schrödinger equations	1241
PIERRE-YVES BIENAIMÉ and ABDESSLAM BOULKHEMAIR	
The shape of low energy configurations of a thin elastic sheet with a single disclination	1285
HEINER OLBERMANN	
The thin-film equation close to self-similarity	1303
CHRISTIAN SEIS	